



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Smith  
RDF

Digitized by Google







A

FIRST LATIN COURSE.

**GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK.**

BY WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.,

**REVISED BY**

**H. DRISLER LL.D.,**

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE, NEW YORK; EDITOR OF  
"LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK LEXICON," ETC.

NEW YORK:  
HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,  
FRANKLIN SQUARE.

1880.





Smith  
RDP







*I have  
in mind  
1868* *See  
91* *17-00* *9-*  
**PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.**

---

**A**

# **FIRST LATIN COURSE.**

**COMPREHENDING**

**GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK.**

**WITH VOCABULARIES.**

**By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.,**

**AUTHOR OF "A HISTORY OF GREECE," "A DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN  
ANTIQUITIES," "A CLASSICAL DICTIONARY," ETC., ETC.**

**REVISED BY**

**H. DRISLER, LL.D.,**

**PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN COLUMBIA COLLEGE, NEW YORK; EDITOR OF  
"LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK LEXICON," ETC.**

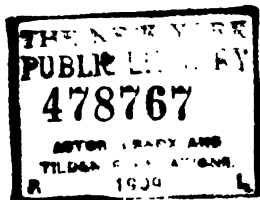
**NEW YORK:**

**HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,**

**FRANKLIN SQUARE**

**1880.**

*Smith*



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, by

HARPER & BROTHERS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Southern District of New York.

## EDITOR'S PREFACE.

---

THE present volume is the first of a series of elementary Latin books in preparation by Dr. W. Smith, Editor of the Dictionary of Biography and Mythology, of Greek and Roman Antiquities, etc. The plan, object, and sources of the work are fully set forth in the Author's Preface subjoined. It has one great merit of a school-book designed for beginners—brevity. The essentials of Grammar are given without unnecessary detail or minute exceptions. At the age at which Latin is usually begun the memory is much more active and developed than the reasoning faculties; the Author has therefore judiciously preferred the synthetic to the analytic method. Exercises in double translation are given after each Declension and Conjugation, to impress the forms thus learned more firmly on the memory.

In revising the work the Editor has made a few alterations and additions, which he trusts may be found to be improvements. As it is essential for an accurate knowledge of Latin to know the quantities of syllables, whatever system of pronunciation may be preferred by the teacher, the Editor has introduced, from the first lesson, the simpler and more comprehensive rules of Prosody. He has added also paradigms of the more frequently-recurring Greek nouns of the First, Second, and Third Declensions, and a few pages of continuous narrative taken from Woodford's Epitome of Cæsar, in the exact words of the author, but with the complex sentences broken up, and the difficult parenthetic clauses omitted. The selec

tion extends from the beginning of Cæsar to the end of the Helvetian Campaign.

In the original work the Vocabularies were thrown together at the end of the Second Part, but in this edition they have been placed before the Exercises to which they respectively belong; there is great convenience in this arrangement, and, as the pupil is expected to learn the Vocabulary by heart, it can not afford him any improper assistance, especially as words once given are not repeated in subsequent Vocabularies.

A Second Part, containing the remainder of Woodford's simplified Cæsar, and L'Homond's "*Viri Romæ*" is in preparation as a Supplement to the present volume, furnishing, it is believed, sufficient reading matter to enable the pupil to enter, with a competent supply of words and experience in translation, upon the profitable study of Cæsar or Virgil.



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE following work is the first of a short series which the writer has undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:

I. The first part contains the Grammatical Forms, with Exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of

the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, etc., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabulary relating to each Exercise is [prefixed to the Exercise], and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are [given at the end of the volume].

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

In the Grammar the writer has deviated as little as possible from the usual arrangement of the Declensions and Conjugations, and only when some clear and positive advantage was to be gained. Thus, in the Third Declension, he has introduced a simpler and easier classification, according to the final letter of the stem,\* instead of the one in the ordinary grammars, which occasions boys so much difficulty and perplexity.

In using the book, it is suggested that the pupil should be required to learn by heart the Vocabulary belonging to each Exercise; that he should then read over the Exercise *vivâ voce* in the class, the master giving such explanations as he may deem necessary; and that then, but not till then, the pupil should write down what he has pre-

\* The *Stem* must be distinguished from the *Root*. The *Root* is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Suffix*; the *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Inflections*; thus, in *agilis*, *agilâ* is the *Stem* of the Adjective, but *ag* is the *Root*.

viously read in class. It should be the aim of the master to prevent the pupil, as far as possible, from committing mistakes to writing, as experience has shown that the original mistake, when fixed in the memory by means of writing, is often remembered long after the correction has been forgotten.

In drawing up the Exercises, the writer has derived assistance from the following books, all of which are used in the public schools of Germany:

Kühner, *Lateinische Vorschule*, Hannover, 1858.

Spiess, *Uebungsbuch zum Uebersetzen aus dem Lateinischen in's Deutsche und aus dem Deutschen in's Lateinische*, Essen, 1858.

Jacobs and Döring, *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, Jena, 1856.

Bleske, *Elementarbuch der Lateinischen Sprache*, Hannover, 1858.

Bonnell, *Uebungstücke zum Uebersetzen aus dem Lateinischen in's Deutsche für die ersten Anfänger*, Berlin, 1854.

Ellendt, *Lateinisches Lesebuch für die untersten Klassen der Gymnasien*, Königsberg, 1857.

Gedike, *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, Berlin, 1857.

He has also to acknowledge his obligations to Mr. T. D. Hall, M.A., for the correction of the proofs and for many valuable suggestions.

It is right to state that the whole of this work was written and the greater part of it printed before the publication of Mr. Hutton's "Introduction to the Study of Greek," the plan of which is very similar to that of the present book.

W. S.

London, November, 1859.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

### GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

	Page
I. THE ALPHABET, QUANTITY, GENDERS, PARTS OF SPEECH, SUBSTANTIVES.....	1
II. THE FIRST DECLENSION .....	3
III. THE SECOND DECLENSION .....	5
IV. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS..	9
V. THE THIRD DECLENSION .....	11
VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.....	21
VII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION .....	23
VIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION.....	24
IX. SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES .....	26
X. SOME GREEK NOUNS .....	28
XI. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES .....	29
XII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .....	30
XIII. THE NUMERALS .....	33
XIV. THE VERB SUM .....	36
XV. COMPOUNDS OF SUM .....	39
XVI. THE PRONOUNS.....	41
XVII. THE VERB .....	46
XVIII. FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.....	48
XIX. SECOND “ “ “ .....	50
XX. THIRD “ “ “ .....	52
XXI. FOURTH “ “ “ .....	54
EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.....	56
XXII. FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.....	69
XXIII. SECOND “ “ “ .....	71
XXIV. THIRD “ “ “ .....	73
XXV. FOURTH “ “ “ .....	75
EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.....	77
XXVI. THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH.....	82
XXVII. DEPONENT VERBS.....	86
XXVIII. PREPOSITIONS .....	92
XXIX. ADVERBS .....	95

<b>XXX. IRREGULAR VERBS:</b>	<b>Page</b>
1. POSSUM.....	97
2. VOLO.....	99
3. NOLO.....	99
4. MALO.....	99
5. FERRO.....	102
6. EO.....	105
7. FIO.....	107
8. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.....	108
<b>XXXI. IMPERSONAL VERBS.....</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>XXXII. DEFECTIVE VERBS (Coepi, Memini, Odi, Aio, In-</b>	
<b>quam, Fari).....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>XXXIII. THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.....</b>	<b>112</b>

## PART II.

## SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

<b>XXXIV. THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>XXXV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.....</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>XXXVI. THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT</b>	
<b>OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>XXXVII. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.....</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>XXXVIII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD.....</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>XXXIX. DIRECT QUESTIONS.....</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>XL. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>XLI. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.....</b>	<b>129</b>
<b>XLII. USE OF THE SUPINES.....</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>XLIII. USE OF THE GERUND.....</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>XLIV. USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.....</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.....</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>WORDS HAVING A DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATION IN THE</b>	
<b>SINGULAR AND PLURAL.....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>PRESENT-PERFECTS AND SUPINES.....</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>INDEX I.—LATIN WORDS.....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>INDEX II.—ENGLISH WORDS.....</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>RULES OF QUANTITY.....</b>	<b>3, 7, 12, 15, 25, 28, 38, 56, 114, 140, 156</b>

# PART I.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

---

### I.—THE ALPHABET. QUANTITY. GENDERS. PARTS OF SPEECH. SUBSTANTIVES.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.  
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Of these *y* and *z* were used only in words introduced from Greek; *k* is found only before *a*, and *q* only before *u*.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants; of these

*l, m, n, r*, are called liquids,

*s* is called a sibilant,

*x* and *z* are double letters, and the rest are called mutes.

A syllable consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath.

Two vowels joined in one syllable make a Diphthong; the Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

2. *Quantity*.—Quantity is used to denote the quicker or slower pronunciation of a syllable.

A syllable is considered *short* or *long* as its vowel is short or long.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel. A syllable marked thus (˘) is sometimes long, sometimes short.

A vowel may be { Short by nature ; as *ānōr*.  
 Long by nature ; as *vērūs*.  
 Short by position (before another vowel) ; as *plus*.  
 Long by position (before two consonants or a double consonant) ; as *pērdīx*.

3. *Genders*.—There are three Genders :

*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

[See general Rules for Gender on page 112.]

4. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language :

- |                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun. | 5. Adverb.       |
| 2. Adjective.            | 6. Preposition.  |
| 3. Pronoun.              | 7. Conjunction.  |
| 4. Verb.                 | 8. Interjection. |

Of these the first four admit of inflection, the last four do not. Inflection is the mode of changing the termination of words to show their relation to other words.

The Inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called Declension, that of Verbs is called Conjugation.

There is no article in the Latin language : hence the Latin *mensa* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

5. *Substantives*.—The Substantive is declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers : *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases : *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

There are five Declensions distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular : thus,



The genitive of the first declension ends in *ae*.

"	"	"	second	"	"	<i>i</i> .
"	"	"	third	"	"	<i>is</i> .
"	"	"	fourth	"	"	<i>us</i> .
"	"	"	fifth	"	"	<i>ei</i> .

## II.—THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Latin Substantives of the First Declension ends in *ā*, and the Genitive in *ae*.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Mens-ā</b> , a table.	<b>Mens-ae</b> ,	tables.
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Mens-ae</b> , of a table.	<b>Mens-ārum</b> ,	of tables.
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Mens-ae</b> , to or for a table.	<b>Mens-is</b> ,	to or for tables.
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Mens-am</b> , a table.	<b>Mens-ās</b> ,	tables.
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>Mens-ā</b> , O table. [table.]	<b>Mens-ae</b> ,	O tables. [bles.]
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Mens-ā</b> , by, with, or from a	<b>Mens-is</b> ,	by, with, or from ta-

All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males; as, *nauta*, a sailor.

[The Declension of Greek Nouns is given on page 28].

### Some General Rules of Quantity.\*

1. A diphthong is always long.
2. A vowel is long before a double consonant, or before two single consonants (not a mute and liquid), or *j*.
3. A vowel is short before another vowel.
4. In declinable words final *a* is short, except in the ablative of the first declension, where *a* is always long.

*H* is not a consonant in Prosody; it does not, with a consonant, lengthen the preceding vowel, nor does it, between two vowels, prevent the shortening of the former.

**RULE 1.**—A personal verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, *pūella currīt*, *the girl runs*; *puellae currunt*, *the girls run*.

\* Except where these Rules apply, the quantity will be marked in the vocabularies until other Rules are given; and the student is expected to accustom himself from the start to marking carefully in pronunciation the quantity of every syllable.

**RULE 2.**—Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case (of the direct object): as, *āquīla ālās hābēt*, *the eagle has wings*.

## VOCABULARY 1.

f = Feminine.

*āla, f.* a wing.  
*āquīla, f.* an eagle.  
*cōlōnia, f.* a colony.  
*cōlumba, f.* a dove.  
*cōrōna, f.* a crown.  
*fēmīna, f.* a woman.  
*filia, f.* a daughter.  
*insūla, f.* an island.

*mensa, f.* a table.  
*ōra, f.* a coast.  
*pecūnia, f.* money.  
*porta, f.* a gate.  
*puella, f.* a girl.  
*rēgina, f.* a queen.  
*Rōma, f.* Rome (the city).  
*rōsa, f.* a rose.

[Give the Rules for the quantity in the above where the marks are omitted.]

*Currit, runs.*  
*Hābēt, has.*

*Currunt, run.*  
*Hābent, have.*

## EXERCISE I.

[The vocabulary should in every case be committed to memory and recited by the pupil before he begins to translate.]

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.* 4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.* 9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

**RULE 3.**—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To Be," they are put in the same case: as, *Britannia est insula*, *Britain is an island*.

**RULE 4.**—Of two Substantives, signifying different things, the limiting one is put in the Genitive case: as, *Britannia est insula Europae*, *Britain is an island of Europe*.

In this example the words "of Europe" indicate a more limited use of the word *island* than in the example under the previous rule. This limiting noun is put (in Latin) in the genitive case, whether it stands before or after the other noun.

## VOCABULARY 2.

*m = Masculine.*

<i>agricōla, m.</i>	<i>a husbandman.</i>	<i>incōla, m.</i>	<i>an inhabitant.</i>
<i>amicitia, f.</i>	<i>friendship.</i>	<i>inimicitia, f.</i>	<i>enmity.</i>
<i>Britannia, f.</i>	<i>Britain.</i>	<i>Itālia, f.</i>	<i>Italy.</i>
<i>causa, f.</i>	<i>a cause.</i>	<i>nauta, m.</i>	<i>a sailor.</i>
<i>Eurōpa, f.</i>	<i>Europe.</i>	<i>patria, f.</i>	<i>a native-land, country.</i>
<i>Gallia, f.</i>	<i>Gaul (now France).</i>	<i>pōeta, m.</i>	<i>a poet.</i>
<i>glōria, f.</i>	<i>glory.</i>	<i>pugna, f.</i>	<i>a battle.</i>
<i>Graecia, f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>	<i>Sicilia, f.</i>	<i>Sicily.</i>
		<i>vita, f.</i>	<i>life.</i>

*Est, is.**Sunt, are.*

## EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia insularum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is an island of Europe. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. An island is the native-land of sailors. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

## III.—THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in *ūs*, *ēr*, and *ir* (in *vir* and compounds), and of Neuter Substantives in *um*. The Genitive Singular ends in *i*.

## A. Masculine.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ūs,</i>	<i>a lord.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ī,</i> <i>lords.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ī,</i>	<i>of a lord.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ōrum,</i> <i>of lords.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ō,</i>	<i>to or for a lord.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-īs,</i> <i>to or for lords.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-um,</i>	<i>a lord.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ōs,</i> <i>lords.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ē,</i>	<i>O lord. [a lord.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ī,</i> <i>O lords. [lords.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Dōmīn-ō,</i>	<i>by, with, or from</i>	<i>Dōmīn-īs,</i> <i>by, with, or from</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Glādi-ūs, a sword.</i>	<i>Glādi-ī,</i>	<i>swords.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Glādi-ī, of a sword.</i>	<i>Glādi-ōrum,</i>	<i>of swords.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Glādi-ō, to or for a sword.</i>	<i>Glādi-īs,</i>	<i>to or for swords.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Glādi-um, a sword.</i>	<i>Glādi-ōs,</i>	<i>swords.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Glādi-ō, O sword. [sword.]</i>	<i>Glādi-ī,</i>	<i>O swords. [swords.]</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Glādi-ō, by, with, or from a</i>	<i>Glādi-īs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from</i>

REMARK.—Proper names in *ius*, and also *filius* and *genius*, are declined like *gladius*, but make the vocative in *i* instead of *ie* (by contraction): as, *Virgilī* (from *Virgilius*), *O Virgil*; *filiī* (from *filius*), *O son*.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Māgistr-, a master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ī,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ī, of a master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ōrum,</i>	<i>of masters.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ō, to or for a master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-īs,</i>	<i>to or for masters.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Māgistr-um, a master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ōs,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Māgistr-, O master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ī,</i>	<i>O masters.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Māgistr-ō, by, with, or from a master.</i>	<i>Māgistr-īs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

		4.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Puēr-, a boy.</i>	<i>Puēr-ī,</i>	<i>boys.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Puēr-ī, of a boy.</i>	<i>Puēr-ōrum,</i>	<i>of boys.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Puēr-ō, to or for a boy.</i>	<i>Puēr-īs,</i>	<i>to or for boys.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Puēr-um, a boy.</i>	<i>Puēr-ōs,</i>	<i>boys.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Puēr-, O boy. [boy.]</i>	<i>Puēr-ī,</i>	<i>O boys.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Puēr-ō, by, with, or from a</i>	<i>Puēr-īs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

		5.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Vir-, a man.</i>	<i>Vir-ī,</i>	<i>men.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Vir-ī, of a man.</i>	<i>Vir-ōrum,</i>	<i>of men.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Vir-ō, to or for a man.</i>	<i>Vir-īs,</i>	<i>to or for men.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Vir-um, a man.</i>	<i>Vir-ōs,</i>	<i>men.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Vir-, O man. [man.]</i>	<i>Vir-ī,</i>	<i>O men.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Vir-ō, by, with, or from a</i>	<i>Vir-īs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from men.</i>

### B. Neuter.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Regn-um, a kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-ō,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Regn-ī, of a kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-ōrum,</i>	<i>of kingdoms.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-īs,</i>	<i>to or for kingdoms.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Regn-um, a kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-ō,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Regn-um, O kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-ō,</i>	<i>O kingdoms.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	<i>Regn-īs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

In all Neuter Substantives, the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are the same in the Singular and Plural respectively.

[For declension of *Deus* and Greek nouns, see page 26 and 28.]

*Additional Rules of Quantity* (see p. 140).

1. *I* final is long.
2. *O* final is long.
3. *U* final is long.
4. *As*, *es*, and *os* final are long.
5. *Is* and *us* final are short; but *is* in plural cases long.

EXCEPTION.—*Us* is long in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. and Gen. Sing. of the 4th Declension, and in the Nominative of Nouns of the 3d Declension, which increase long in the Genitive; as, *virtūs, ūtis*, etc.

## EXERCISE III.

*Masculine Substantives in ūs.*

## VOCABULARY 3.

*amicus*, m. a friend.  
*avus*, m. a grandfather.  
*dōminus*, m. a lord, master.  
*ēquus*, m. a horse.  
*filius*, m. a son.  
*flūvius*, m. a river.  
*glādius*, m. a sword.

*hortus*, m. a garden.  
*inimicus*, m. an enemy.  
*Rhēnus*, m. the Rhine.  
*Rhōdānus*, m. the Rhone.  
*ripa*, f. a bank.  
*servus*, m. a slave.  
*taurus*, m. a bull.

REMARK.—When two or more nominatives singular are connected by a conjunction, the verb is put in the plural; as, *Rhēnus et Rhōdānus sunt fluvii*, *the Rhine and the Rhone are rivers*.

1. *Filius currit.* 2. *Servi currunt.* 3. *Dominus servos habet.* 4. *Filius domini servos habet.* 5. *Dominus servos et equos habet.* 6. *Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent.* 7. *Avus servos et equos habet.* 8. *Filius amici hortum habet.* 9. *Filii inimicorum gladios habent.* 10. *Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae.* 11. *Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae.* 12. *Hortus rosas habet.*

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person (or thing) who gains or receives any thing: as, *Māgister cōlumbam pūēro dat*, *the master gives a dove to the boy*.

## EXERCISE IV.

*Masculine Substantives in ōr and Ir.*

## VOCABULARY 4.

<b>āger, m.</b>	<i>a field, territory.</i>	<b>minister, m.</b>	<i>a servant.</i>
<b>gēner, m.</b>	<i>a son-in-law.</i>	<b>puer, m.</b>	<i>a boy.</i>
<b>liber, m.</b>	<i>a book.</i>	<b>sōcer, m.</b>	<i>a father-in-law.</i>
<b>māgister, m.</b>	<i>a master, teacher.</i>	<b>vir, m.</b>	<i>a man.</i>

Minister, liber, āger, are declined like māgister. Sōcer, gēner, are declined like puer.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius viri libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros virōrum pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum viri ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys. 3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends of the boy have the books of the man. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law. 11. The man and the boy have fields and books. 12. The boy is the son of the man.

## EXERCISE V.

*Neuter Substantives.*

## VOCABULARY 5.

*n=Neuter.*

<b>argentum, n.</b>	<i>silver.</i>	<b>praemium, n.</b>	<i>a reward.</i>
<b>aurum, n.</b>	<i>gold.</i>	<b>regnum, n.</b>	<i>a kingdom.</i>
<b>bellum, n.</b>	<i>war.</i>	<b>scūtum, n.</b>	<i>a shield.</i>
<b>coelum, n.</b>	<i>heaven.</i>	<b>templum, n.</b>	<i>a temple.</i>
<b>diligentia, f.</b>	<i>diligence.</i>	<b>discipūlus, m.</b>	<i>a pupil, scholar.</i>
<b>dōnum, n.</b>	<i>a gift.</i>	<b>morbus, m.</b>	<i>a disease.</i>
<b>gaudium, n.</b>	<i>joy.</i>	<b>mūrus, m.</b>	<i>a wall.</i>
<b>mētallum, n.</b>	<i>a metal.</i>	<b>Rōmānus, m.</b>	<i>a Roman.</i>
<b>oppidum, n.</b>	<i>a town.</i>		

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum coeli. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa mor-

borum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templum sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. The books are the gift of a friend. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

#### IV.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in *ūs, ā, um*, or *ēr, ā, um*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: *as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, good; nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum, black; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnerum, tender.*

	Sing.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō

	1. Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Nīgēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um
<i>Voc.</i>	Nigr-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō

	2.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	<i>Nom.</i>	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ī	<i>Gen.</i>	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	<i>Dat.</i>	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	<i>Acc.</i>	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	<i>Voc.</i>	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	<i>Abl.</i>	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs

**RULE 6.**—Adjectives agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case.

## EXERCISE VI.

## VOCABULARY 6.

<i>acutus, a, um,</i>	<i>sharp.</i>	<i>splendidus, a, um,</i>	<i>splendid,</i>
<i>albus, a, um,</i>	<i>white.</i>		<i>bright.</i>
<i>altus, a, um,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>	<i>timidus, a, um,</i>	<i>timid.</i>
<i>bellicosus, a, um,</i>	<i>warlike.</i>	<i>aeger, gra, grum,</i>	<i>sick.</i>
<i>bonus, a, um,</i>	<i>good.</i>	<i>miser, era, erum,</i>	<i>wretched.</i>
<i>gratus, a, um,</i>	<i>pleasing.</i>	<i>niger, gra, grum,</i>	<i>black.</i>
<i>latus, a, um,</i>	<i>wide, broad.</i>	<i>pulcher, chra, chrum,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>longus, a, um,</i>	<i>long.</i>	<i>sacer, cra, crum,</i>	<i>sacred.</i>
<i>magnus, a, um,</i>	<i>great.</i>	<i>tener, era, erum,</i>	<i>tender.</i>
<i>malus, a, um,</i>	<i>bad, wicked.</i>	<i>exemplum, n.</i>	<i>an example.</i>
<i>molestus, a, um,</i>	<i>troublesome.</i>	<i>hasta, f.</i>	<i>a spear.</i>
<i>multus, a, um,</i>	<i>much, many.</i>	<i>terra, f.</i>	<i>the earth,</i>
<i>noxius, a, um,</i>	<i>hurtful, injurious.</i>		<i>land.</i>
<i>ignavus, a, um,</i>	<i>lazy.</i>	<i>numerus, m.</i>	<i>a number.</i>
<i>parvus, a, um,</i>	<i>small, little.</i>	<i>periculum, n.</i>	<i>danger.</i>
<i>rapidus, a, um,</i>	<i>rapid.</i>		

*Gratus, molestus, noxius, are constructed with the Dative Case; as, pleasing to a friend, gratus amico.*

**A.**—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est timidum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

**B.**—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Insula parva incolas habet. 7. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 8. Magister librum bono puero dat. 9. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 10. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 11. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword.



7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river of Gaul.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus tenero filio est molestus. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black horses are troublesome to the man. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of a lazy boy is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

### V.—THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. The Genitive Singular always ends in *is*.

#### A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

1. Substantives the stems\* of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Urb- <i>s</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), a city.	Urb- <i>ēs</i> ,	cities.
Gen.	Urb- <i>is</i> , of a city.	Urb- <i>ium</i> ,	of cities.
Dat.	Urb- <i>i</i> , to or for a city.	Urb- <i>ibūs</i> ,	to or for cities.
Acc.	Urb- <i>em</i> , a city.	Urb- <i>ēs</i> ,	cities.
Voc.	Urb- <i>e</i> , O city. [ <i>city</i> ].	Urb- <i>ēs</i> ,	O chiefs.
Abl.	Urb- <i>e</i> , by, with, or from a	Urb- <i>ibūs</i> ,	by, with, or from cities.
2.			
Nom.	Princēp- <i>s</i> ( <i>c.</i> ), a chief.	Princēp- <i>ēs</i> ,	chiefs.
Gen.	Princēp- <i>is</i> , of a chief.	Princēp- <i>um</i> ,	of chiefs.
Dat.	Princēp- <i>i</i> , to or for a chief.	Princēp- <i>ibūs</i> ,	to or for chiefs.
Acc.	Princēp- <i>em</i> , a chief.	Princēp- <i>ēs</i> ,	chiefs.
Voc.	Princēp- <i>e</i> , O chief. [ <i>a chief</i> ].	Princēp- <i>ēs</i> ,	O chiefs. [ <i>chiefs</i> ].
Abl.	Princēp- <i>e</i> , by, with, or from	Princēp- <i>ibūs</i> ,	by, with, or from

\* The Stem is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away, as *urb*, *hiem*, *duc*.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Hiem-s</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>winter.</i>	<b>Hiēm-ēs</b> , <i>winters.</i>	
Gen.	<b>Hiēm-is</b> , <i>of winter.</i>	<b>Hiēm-um</b> , <i>of winters.</i>	
Dat.	<b>Hiēm-i</b> , <i>to or for winter.</i>	<b>Hiēm-ibūs</b> , <i>to or for winters.</i>	
Acc.	<b>Hiēm-em</b> , <i>winter.</i>	<b>Hiēm-es</b> , <i>winters.</i>	
Voc.	<b>Hiem-s</b> , <i>O winter.</i> [ <i>winter.</i>	<b>Hiēm-es</b> , <i>O winters.</i>	[ <i>ters.</i>
Abl.	<b>Hiēm-ē</b> , <i>by, with, or from</i>	<b>Hiēm-ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from win-</i>	

2. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters, *c*, *g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *æ*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Dux</b> ( <i>c.</i> ), <i>a leader.</i>	<b>Dŭc-ēs</b> , <i>leaders.</i>	
Gen.	<b>Dŭc-is</b> , <i>of a leader.</i>	<b>Dŭc-um</b> , <i>of leaders.</i>	
Dat.	<b>Dŭc-i</b> , <i>to or for a leader.</i>	<b>Dŭc-ibūs</b> , <i>to or for leaders.</i>	
Acc.	<b>Dŭc-em</b> , <i>a leader.</i>	<b>Dŭc-es</b> , <i>leaders.</i>	
Voc.	<b>Dux</b> , <i>O leader.</i> [ <i>leader.</i>	<b>Dŭc-es</b> , <i>O leaders.</i>	
Abl.	<b>Dŭc-ē</b> , <i>by, with, or from a</i>	<b>Dŭc-ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from leaders.</i>	

		2.
Nom.	<b>Lex</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>a law.</i>	<b>Lēg-ēs</b> , <i>laws.</i>
Gen.	<b>Lēg-is</b> , <i>of a law.</i>	<b>Lēg-um</b> , <i>of laws.</i>
Dat.	<b>Lēg-i</b> , <i>to or for a law.</i>	<b>Lēg-ibūs</b> , <i>to or for laws.</i>
Acc.	<b>Lēg-em</b> , <i>a law.</i>	<b>Lēg-es</b> , <i>laws.</i>
Voc.	<b>Lex</b> , <i>O law.</i> [ <i>law.</i>	<b>Lēg-es</b> , <i>O laws.</i>
Abl.	<b>Lēg-ē</b> , <i>by, with, or from a</i>	<b>Lēg-ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from laws.</i>

		3.
Nom.	<b>Jūdex</b> ( <i>c.</i> ), <i>a judge.</i>	<b>Jūdīc-ēs</b> , <i>judges.</i>
Gen.	<b>Jūdīc-is</b> , <i>of a judge.</i>	<b>Jūdīc-um</b> , <i>of judges.</i>
Dat.	<b>Jūdīc-i</b> , <i>to or for a judge.</i>	<b>Jūdīc-ibūs</b> , <i>to or for judges.</i>
Acc.	<b>Jūdīc-em</b> , <i>a judge.</i>	<b>Jūdīc-es</b> , <i>judges.</i>
Voc.	<b>Jūdex</b> , <i>O judge.</i> [ <i>a judge.</i>	<b>Jūdīc-es</b> , <i>O judges.</i>
Abl.	<b>Jūdīc-ē</b> , <i>by, with, or from</i>	<b>Jūdīc-ibūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from judges.</i>

### Additional Rules of Quantity.

1. In the singular increment of nouns *a* and *o* are usually long; *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y* are short.

2. In the plural increment of nouns *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i* and *u* are short.

[By *increment* is meant the syllable (or syllables) which an oblique case has more than the nominative; as *aetas*, genitive *aetātis*, in which *āt* is the (singular) increment; *pueri* (nominative plural), *puerōrum* (genitive plural), in which *ōr* is the (plural) increment; and so *duces*, *ductibus*.]

There are several exceptions to the rule for the singular increment; these will be marked for the present in the vocabularies, and will be specified more fully in subsequent pages: see exceptions on p. 156.

## VOCABULARY 7.

c=Common Gender.

<i>hiems, hiemis, f.</i>	<i>winter.</i>
<i>trabs, trabis, f.</i>	<i>a beam.</i>
<i>urbs, urbis, f.</i>	<i>a city.</i>
<i>arx, arsis, f.</i>	<i>a citadel.</i>
<i>dux, dūcis, c.</i>	<i>a leader, general.</i>
<i>pax, pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>
<i>iudex, iudicis, m.</i>	<i>a judge.</i>
<i>lex, legis, f.</i>	<i>a law.</i>

<i>rex, regis, m.</i>	<i>a king.</i>
<i>bēnignus, ā, um, kind.</i>	
<i>firmus, ā, um, strong.</i>	
<i>jucundus, ā, um, pleasant.</i>	
<i>justus, ā, um, just.</i>	
<i>Rōmulus, ī, m. Romulus.</i>	
<i>sevērus, ā, um, severe.</i>	

Erāt, was.

Erant, were.

## EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Firma est arx urbis. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Substantives the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Aetā-s (f.), an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ēs, ages.</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Aetāt-is, of an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-um, of ages.</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Aetāt-i, to or for an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ibūs, to or for ages.</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Aetāt-em, an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ēs, ages.</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Aetā-s, O age. [an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ēs, O ages.</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from</i>	<i>Aetāt-ibūs, by, with, or from ages.</i>	
2.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Lāp-is (m.), a stone.</i>	<i>Lāpī-ēs, stones.</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Lāpī-is, of a stone.</i>	<i>Lāpī-um, of stones.</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Lāpī-i, to or for a stone.</i>	<i>Lāpī-ibūs, to or for stones.</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Lāpī-em, a stone.</i>	<i>Lāpī-ēs, stones.</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Lāpī-s, O stone. [stone.</i>	<i>Lāpī-ēs, O stones.</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Lāpī-ē, by, with, or from a</i>	<i>Lāpī-ibūs, by, with, or from stones.</i>	

\* *Lex, rex, plebs, and ver* always increase long (see p. 156).

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Milē-s (m.), a soldier.	Milit-ēs,	soldiers.
Gen.	Milit-is,	Milit-um,	of soldiers.
Dat.	Milit-i,	Milit-ibus,	to or for soldiers.
Acc.	Milit-em,	Milit-ēs,	soldiers.
Voc.	Milē-s,	Milit-ēs,	O soldiers.
Abl.	Milit-ē,	Milit-ibus,	by, with, or from a soldiers.

**RULE 7.**—The Ablative case indicates—(1.) The instrument or means by which something is done; as, *dōmīnus hastā servum occīdit*, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2.) The time when something is done or takes place; as, *noctes hīemē longae sunt*, *the nights are long in winter.*

## VOCABULARY 8.

cōmēs, cōmītis, c.	a companion.	aestīa, aestātis, f.	summer.
custōs, custōdia, m.	a guardian.	civītās, tātis, f.	state.
ēquēs, ēquītis, m.	a horseman.	tempestās, tātis, f.	tempest.
lāpis, lāpīdis, m.	a stone.	voluntās, tātis, f.	wish.
milēs, milītis, m.	a soldier.	nox, noctis, f.	night.
mors, mortis, f.	death.	auctumnus, i, m.	autumn.
obses, obsidis, c.	a hostage.	nātūra, ae, f.	nature.
pēdes, pēditis, m.	a foot-soldier.	clārūs, ō, um,	clear, renowned.

Occīdit, kills.

Occidunt, kill.

## EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Substantives the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>Consul</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a consul.</i>	<b>Consul-ēs,</b>	<i>consuls.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>Consul-is,</b>	<b>Consul-um,</b>	<i>of consuls.</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>Consul-i,</b>	<b>Consul-ibūs,</b>	<i>to or for consuls.</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Consul-em,</b>	<b>Consul-ēs,</b>	<i>consuls.</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>Consul,</b>	<b>Consul-ēs,</b>	<i>O consuls.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>Consul-ē,</b>	<b>Consul-ibūs,</b>	<i>by, with, or from consuls.</i>

		2.	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>Clāmōr</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a shout.</i>	<b>Clāmōr-ēs,</b>	<i>shouts.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>Clāmōr-is,</b>	<b>Clāmōr-um,</b>	<i>of shouts.</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>Clāmōr-i,</b>	<b>Clāmōr-ibūs,</b>	<i>to or for shouts.</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Clāmōr-em,</b>	<b>Clāmōr-ēs,</b>	<i>shouts.</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>Clāmōr,</b>	<b>Clāmōr-ēs,</b>	<i>O shouts.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>Clāmōr-ē,</b>	<b>Clāmōr-ibūs,</b>	<i>by, with, or from shouts.</i>

		3.	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>Ansēr</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a goose.</i>	<b>Ansēr-ēs,</b>	<i>geese.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>Ansēr-is,</b>	<b>Ansēr-um,</b>	<i>of geese.</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>Ansēr-i,</b>	<b>Ansēr-ibūs,</b>	<i>to or for geese.</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Ansēr-em,</b>	<b>Ansēr-ēs,</b>	<i>geese.</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>Ansēr,</b>	<b>Ansēr-ēs,</b>	<i>O geese.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>Ansēr-ē,</b>	<b>Ansēr-ibūs,</b>	<i>by, with, or from geese.</i>

		4.	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>Pāter,</b>	<b>Patr-ēs,</b>	<i>fathers.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>Patr-is,</b>	<b>Patr-um,</b>	<i>of fathers.</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>Patr-i,</b>	<b>Patr-ibūs,</b>	<i>to or for fathers.</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Patr-em,</b>	<b>Patr-ēs,</b>	<i>fathers.</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>Pāter,</b>	<b>Patr-ēs,</b>	<i>O fathers.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>Patr-ē,</b>	<b>Patr-ibūs,</b>	<i>by, with, or from fathers.</i>

		5.	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>Flōs</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a flower.</i>	<b>Flōr-ēs,</b>	<i>flowers.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>Flōr-is,</b>	<b>Flōr-um,</b>	<i>of flowers.</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>Flōr-i,</b>	<b>Flōr-ibūs,</b>	<i>to or for flowers.</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>Flōr-em,</b>	<b>Flōr-ēs,</b>	<i>flowers.</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>Flōs,</b>	<b>Flōr-ēs,</b>	<i>O flowers.</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>Flōr-ē,</b>	<b>Flōr-ibūs,</b>	<i>by, with, or from flowers.</i>

### Rules of Quantity (Monosyllables).

1. Words of one syllable, ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, and *t*, have their vowel short, except *nīl*, *sāl*, and *sōl*.

2. Words of one syllable in *c*, *n*, *r*, and *s*, have their vowel long, except *nēc*, *hēc* (pron., common), *ān*, *īn*, *cōr*, *vīr*, *pēr*, *tēr*, *bīs*, *cīs*, *ēs* (from *sum*), *īs*, *ōs* (gen. *ossis*), and *quīs*.

## VOCABULARY 9.

<b>frāter</b> , tris, m.	a brother.
<b>māter</b> , tris, f.	a mother.
<b>pāter</b> , tris, m.	a father.
<b>aggēr</b> , ōris, m.	a mound.
<b>calōr</b> , ōris, m.	heat.
<b>clāmōr</b> , ōris, m.	a shout.
<b>cōlōr</b> , ōris, m.	color.
<b>lābōr</b> , ōris, m.	labor, hardship.
<b>ōdōr</b> , ōris, m.	smell, scent.
<b>sōrōr</b> , ōris, f.	a sister.

<b>victōr</b> , ōris, m.	a conqueror.
<b>flōs</b> , ōris, m.	a flower.
<b>sōl</b> , sōlis, m.	the sun.
<b>castrā</b> , ōrum, n. pl.	a camp.
<b>tōtū</b> , ō, um,	whole.
<b>fossa</b> , ae, f.	a ditch.
<b>mūnimentum</b> , i, n.	a fortification.
<b>praeda</b> , ae, f.	booty.
<b>vārius</b> , a, um,	different, various.

## EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Varii sunt odores florum. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. Various are the colors of the flowers. 5. The brother gives a flower to his sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Substantives of which the stem ends in *ōn* or *ōn* (*īn*).

	Sing.
<b>Nom.</b> <b>Leo</b> (m.),	a lion.
<b>Gen.</b> <b>Leōn-is</b> ,	of a lion.
<b>Dat.</b> <b>Leōn-i</b> ,	to or for a lion.
<b>Acc.</b> <b>Leōn-em</b> ,	a lion.
<b>Voc.</b> <b>Leo</b> ,	O lion.
<b>Abl.</b> <b>Leōn-ē</b> ,	by, with, or from a lion.

	Plur.
<b>Nom.</b> <b>Leōn-ēs</b> ,	lions.
<b>Gen.</b> <b>Leōn-um</b> ,	of lions.
<b>Dat.</b> <b>Leōn-ibūs</b> ,	to or for lions.
<b>Acc.</b> <b>Leōn-ēs</b> ,	lions.
<b>Voc.</b> <b>Leōn-ēs</b> ,	O lions.
<b>Abl.</b> <b>Leōn-ibūs</b> ,	by, with, or from lions.

## 2.

<b>Nom.</b> <b>Virgo</b> ,	a maiden.
<b>Gen.</b> <b>Virgīn-is</b> ,	of a maiden.
<b>Dat.</b> <b>Virgīn-i</b> ,	to or for a maiden.
<b>Acc.</b> <b>Virgīn-em</b> ,	a maiden.
<b>Voc.</b> <b>Virgo</b> ,	O maiden.
<b>Abl.</b> <b>Virgīn-ē</b> ,	by, with, or from a maiden.

<b>Nom.</b> <b>Virgīn-ēs</b> ,	maidens.
<b>Gen.</b> <b>Virgīn-um</b> ,	of maidens.
<b>Dat.</b> <b>Virgīn-ibūs</b> ,	to or for maidens.
<b>Acc.</b> <b>Virgīn-ēs</b> ,	maidens.
<b>Voc.</b> <b>Virgīn-ēs</b> ,	O maidens.
<b>Abl.</b> <b>Virgīn-ibūs</b> ,	by, with, or from maidens.

## VOCABULARY 10.

leo, ōnis, m.	a lion.	alter, * ēra, ērum, (the other), sec-
Jūno, ōnis, f.	Juno.	ond.
pāvo, ōnis, m.	a peacock.	certus, a, um, certain.
sermō, ōnis, m.	a discourse.	dēa, ae, f. a goddess.
consuetūdo, inis, f.	habit.	doctus, a, um, learned.
hōmo, inis, c.	a man, a woman.	infinitus, a, um, unbounded, infi-
multitūdo, inis, f.	multitude.	nite.
virgo, inis, f.	a virgin, maiden.	Mīnerva, ae, f. Minerva.
ōrātor, ōris, m.	an orator.	vālidus, a, um, strong.

## EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

6. Substantives of which the stem ends in *i*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-is (c.), an enemy.	Host-ēs, enemies.	
Gen.	Host-i, of an enemy.	Host-ium, of enemies.	
Dat.	Host-i, to or for an enemy.	Host-ibūs, to or for enemies.	
Acc.	Host-em, an enemy.	Host-ēs, enemies.	
Voc.	Host-is, O enemy.	Host-ēs, O enemies.	
Abl.	Host-ē, by, with, or from an enemy.	Host-ibūs, by, with, or from enemies.	

Some stems in *i* have also a form in *e*, and are thus declined :

	2.
Nom.	Nūb-ēs (f.), a cloud.
Gen.	Nūb-i, of a cloud.
Dat.	Nūb-i, to or for a cloud.
Acc.	Nūb-em, a cloud.
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, O cloud. [a cloud.
Abl.	Nūb-ē, by, with, or from
	Nūb-ēs, clouds.
	Nūb-ium, of clouds.
	Nūb-ibūs, to or for clouds.
	Nūb-ēs, clouds.
	Nūb-ēs, O clouds.
	Nūb-ibūs, by, with, or from clouds.

\* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *alterius*, dative *alteri*; see page 29

## VOCABULARY 11.

*civis*, is, c. a citizen.  
*classis*, is, f. a fleet.  
*hostis*, is, c. an enemy (public).  
*turris*, is, f. a tower.  
*vallis*, is, f. a valley.  
*vestis*, is, f. a garment.  
*clādes*, is, f. slaughter.  
*nūbes*, is, f. a cloud.

*rūpes*, is, f. a rock.  
*angustus*, a, um, narrow.  
*āter*, ātra, ātrum, black.  
*dūrus*, a, um, hard.  
*nix*, nivis, f. snow.  
*nōtus*, a, um, known.  
*pēritus*, a, um, skillful.  
*Rōmānus*, a, um, Roman.

## EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skillful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skillful.

## B. Neuter Substantives.

1. Substantives the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

	Sing.		1.		Plur.
Nom.	Nōmēn, a name.		Nōmīn-ā,		names.
Gen.	Nōmīn-is, of a name.		Nōmīn-um,		of names.
Dat.	Nōmīn-i, to or for a name.		Nōmīn-ibūs,		to or for names.
Acc.	Nōmēn, a name.		Nōmīn-ā,		names.
Voc.	Nōmēn, O name.	[name.	Nōmīn-ā,		O names.
Abl.	Nōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a		Nōmīn-ibūs,		by, with, or from names.

## 2.

Nom.	Fulgūr, lightning.		Fulgūr-ā,		lightnings.
Gen.	Fulgūr-is, of lightning.		Fulgūr-um,		of lightnings.
Dat.	Fulgūr-i, to or for lightning.		Fulgūr-ibūs,		to or for lightnings.
Acc.	Fulgūr, lightning.		Fulgūr-ā,		lightnings.
Voc.	Fulgūr, O lightning.		Fulgūr-ā,		O lightnings.
Abl.	Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning.		Fulgūr-ibūs,		by, with, or from lightnings.

\* But *udis*, *uris*, *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have *u* long.



Sing.		3.	Plur.
Nom.	Crūs, a leg.	Crūr-ă,	legs.
Gen.	Crūr-is, of a leg.	Crūr-um,	of legs.
Dat.	Crūr-i, to or for a leg.	Crūr-ibūs,	to or for legs.
Acc.	Crūs, a leg.	Crūr-ă,	legs.
Voc.	Crūs, O leg.	Crūr-ă,	O legs.
Abl.	Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a	Crūr-ibūs,	by, with, or from legs.
4.			
Nom.	Ōpūs, a work.	Ōpēr-ă,	works.
Gen.	Ōpēr-is, of a work.	Ōpēr-um,	of works.
Dat.	Ōpēr-i, to or for a work.	Ōpēr-ibūs,	to or for works.
Acc.	Ōpūs, a work.	Ōpēr-ă,	works.
Voc.	Ōpūs, O work.	Ōpēr-ă,	O works.
Abl.	Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a	Ōpēr-ibūs,	by, with, or from works.
5.			
Nom.	Corpūs, a body.	Corpōr-ă,	bodies.
Gen.	Corpōr-is,* of a body.	Corpōr-um,	of bodies.
Dat.	Corpōr-i, to or for a body.	Corpōr-ibūs,	to or for bodies.
Acc.	Corpūs, a body.	Corpōr-ă,	bodies.
Voc.	Corpūs, O body.	Corpōr-ă,	O bodies.
Abl.	Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Corpōr-ibūs,	by, with, or from bodies
6.			
Nom.	Căpūt, a head.	Căpit-ă,	heads.
Gen.	Căpit-is, of a head.	Căpit-um,	of heads.
Dat.	Căpit-i, to or for a head.	Căpit-ibūs,	to or for heads.
Acc.	Căpūt, a head.	Căpit-ă,	heads.
Voc.	Căpūt, O head.	Căpit-ă,	O heads.
Abl.	Căpit-ē, by, with, or from a	Căpit-ibūs,	by, with, or from heads.

2. Substantives the stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e, al, ar*).

Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Măr-ē, the sea.	Măr-ă,	seas.
Gen.	Măr-is, of the sea.	Măr-um,	of seas.
Dat.	Măr-i, to or for the sea.	Măr-ibūs,	to or for seas.
Acc.	Măr-ē, the sea.	Măr-ă,	seas.
Voc.	Măr-ē, O sea.	Măr-ă,	O seas.
Abl.	Măr-i, by, with, or from the	Măr-ibūs,	by, with, or from seas.
2.			
Nom.	Ănimăl, an animal.	Ănimăl-ă,	animals.
Gen.	Ănimăl-is, of an animal.	Ănimăl-um,	of animals.
Dat.	Ănimăl-i, to or for an animal.	Ănimăl-ibūs,	to or for animals.
Acc.	Ănimăl, an animal.	Ănimăl-ă,	animals.
Voc.	Ănimăl, O animal.	Ănimăl-ă,	O animals.
Abl.	Ănimăl-i, by, with, or from an animal.	Ănimăl-ibūs,	by, with, or from animals.

\* *O* in the increment of neuter nouns (of the third declension) is short.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Calcār,	a spur.	Calcār-ī,	spurs.
Gen. Calcār-is,	of a spur.	Calcār-um,	of spurs.
Dat. Calcār-i,	to or for a spur.	Calcār-ibūs,	to or for spurs.
Acc. Calcār,	a spur.	Calcār-ī,	spurs.
Voc. Calcār,	O spur.	Calcār-ī,	O spurs.
Abl. Calcār-i,	by, with, or from a	Calcār-ibūs,	by, with, or from spurs.

## EXERCISE XII.

## VOCABULARY 12.

grāmēn, īnis, n.	grass.	ānīmāl, ālis, n.	an animal.
nōmēn, īnis, n.	a name.	calcār, āris, n.	a spur.
gēnūs, ōris, n.	a race, a class.	vectigāl, ālis, n.	a tax.
ōpūs, ōris, n.	a work.	annus, i, m.	a year.
sidūs, ōris, n.	a star, constellation.	antīquus, a, um,	ancient.
scēlūs, ōris, n.	a crime.	aureus, a, um,	golden.
dēcūs, ōris, n.	an ornament.	bālaena, ae, f.	a whale.
corpūs, ōris, n.	a body.	Carthāgo, īnis, f.	Carthage (a city of Africa).
frigūs, ōris, n.	cold.	Cicēro, ōnis, m.	Cicero (a celebrated Roman orator).
lītūs, ōris, n.	a shore.	dōmiciliūm, i, n.	abode.
tempūs, ōris, n.	time.	ēlēphantus, i, m.	an elephant.
cāpūt, ītis, n.	a head.	nōvus, a, um,	new.
crūs, crūris, n.	a leg.	ōcūlus, i, m.	an eye.
fulgur, ūris, n.	lightning.	piscis, is, m.	a fish.
ōs, ōris, n.	a mouth.	prōfundus, a, um,	deep.
rētē, is, n.	a net.		
mārē, is, n.	the sea.		

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are strong. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt

profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

## VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in *er, ris, re*, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular; as, *ācēr, ācēris, ācrē, keen, sharp*.

	Sing.				Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Ācēr	ācēris	ācrē		Ācērs	ācrī
Gen.	Ācēris*				Ācērium	
Dat.	Ācēri				Ācēribūs	
Acc.	Ācērem		ācrē		Ācērs	ācrī
Voc.	Ācēr	ācēris	ācrē		Ācērs	ācrī
Abl.	Ācēri				Ācēribūs	

2. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension; as, *tristis, tristē, sad*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-is	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-ī
Gen.	Trist-is			Trist-ium	
Dat.	Trist-i			Trist-ibūs	
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-ī
Voc.	Trist-is	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-ī
Abl.	Trist-i			Trist-ibūs	

3. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension; as, *felix, fortunate; prūdens, prudent*.

\* Where the forms are not given for feminine and neuter, they are the same as the masculine form

Sing.		1.		Plur.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> Fēlix		Fēlic-ēs		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ī
<i>Gen.</i> Fēlic-is		Fēlic-ium		Fēlic-ibūs	
<i>Dat.</i> Fēlic-i		Fēlic-ibūs		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ī
<i>Acc.</i> Fēlic-em	fēlix	Fēlic-ēs		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ī
<i>Voc.</i> Fēl-ix		Fēlic-ibūs			
<i>Abl.</i> Fēlic-i or ē					

2.		M. and F.		N.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> Prūdēns		Prūdēt-ēs		prūdēt-ī	
<i>Gen.</i> Prūdēt-is		Prūdēt-ium		Prūdēt-ibūs	
<i>Dat.</i> Prūdēt-i		Prūdēt-ibūs		Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-ī
<i>Acc.</i> Prūdēt-em	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs		Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-ī
<i>Voc.</i> Prūdēns		Prūdēt-ibūs			
<i>Abl.</i> Prūdēt-i or ē					

## VOCABULARY 13.

acer, acris, acre, <i>keen, sharp.</i>	praestans, antis, <i>excellent.</i>
cēler, cēris, cēre, <i>swift.</i>	pōtens, entis, <i>powerful.</i>
brēvis, e, <i>short.</i>	prūdēns, entis, <i>prudent.</i>
dulcis, e, <i>sweet.</i>	arma, orum, n. pl. <i>arms.</i>
difficilis, e, <i>difficult.</i>	carmēn, inis, n. <i>a song.</i>
facilis, e, <i>easy.</i>	consilium, i, n. <i>plan, counsel.</i>
fīdēlis, e, <i>faithful.</i>	fūror, ōris, m. <i>madness.</i>
lēvis, e, <i>light.</i>	hūmānus, a, um, <i>human.</i>
omnia, e, <i>all, every.</i>	initium, i, n. <i>a beginning.</i>
ūtilis, e, <i>useful.</i>	ira, ae, f. <i>anger.</i>
audax, acis, <i>bold.</i>	nāvis, is, f. <i>a ship.</i>
rāpax, acis, <i>rapacious.</i>	Persa, ae, m. <i>a Persian.</i>
fēlix, icis, <i>fortunate, success- ful.</i>	sagitta, ae, f. <i>an arrow.</i>
vēlox, ōcis, <i>swift.</i>	via, ae, f. <i>a way.</i>
ingens, entis, <i>immense.</i>	vētus, vētēris, <i>old.</i>
praesens, entis, <i>present.</i>	vīnum, i, n. <i>wine.</i>
	vulnūs, ōris, n. <i>a wound.</i>

## EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. Ira furor brevis est. 2. Ira militum erat acris. 3. Via est facilis. 4. Omne initium est difficile. 5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt. 6. Vulnus militis est leve. 7. Carmen est dulce. 8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labor is easy in the winter. 4. Labor is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

## VII.—THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *ū*. The Genitive Singular ends in *ūs*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Grād-ūs (m.), a step.	Grād-ūs,	steps.
Gen. Grād-ūs of a step.	Grād-ūum,	of steps.
Dat. Grād-ūi, to or for a step.	Grād-ībūs,	to or for steps.
Acc. Grād-um, a step.	Grād-ūs,	steps.
Voc. Grād-ūs O step. [a step.	Grād-ūs,	O steps.
Abl. Grād-ū, by, with, or from	Grād-ībūs,	by, with, or from steps.

2.	
Nom. Gēn-ū, a knee.	Gēn-ūā, knees.
Gen. Gēn-ūs, of a knee.	Gēn-ūum, of knees.
Dat. Gēn-ūi, to or for a knee.	Gēn-ībūs, to or for knees.
Acc. Gēn-ū, a knee.	Gēn-ūā, knees.
Voc. Gēn-ū, O knee. [knee.	Gēn-ūā, O knees.
Abl. Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a	Gēn-ībūs, by, with, or from knees.

## VOCABULARY 14.

acūs, ūs, f.	a needle.	fructus, us, m.	fruit.
arcūs, ūs, m.	a bow.	māgistrātus, us, m.	a magistrate.
auditus, ūs, m.	hearing.	mānus, us, f.	a hand.
cursus, ūs, m.	running.	peditātus, us, m.	infantry.
equitātus, ūs, m.	cavalry.	portus, us, m.	a harbor.
exercitus, us, m.	an army.	quercus, us, f.	an oak.
ficus, us, f.	a fig, fig-tree.	sensus, ur, m.	a sense.

<i>visus, us, m.</i>	<i>seeing.</i>	<i>cervus, i, m.</i>	<i>a stag.</i>
<i>cornu, ūs, n.</i>	<i>a horn.</i>	<i>instrumentum, i, n.</i>	<i>an instrument.</i>
<i>genu, ūs, n.</i>	<i>a knee.</i>	<i>magnificus, a, um,</i>	<i>magnificent.</i>
<i>auris, is, f.</i>	<i>an ear.</i>	<i>tūtus, a, um,</i>	<i>safe.</i>
<i>coelestis, e,</i>	<i>belonging to the heav-</i>	<i>Scytha, ae, m.</i>	<i>a Scythian.</i>
	<i>ens; of heaven;</i>	<i>sēdes, is, f.</i>	<i>a seat.</i>
	<i>hence</i>	<i>taurus, i, m.</i>	<i>a bull.</i>
<i>arcus coelestis,</i>	<i>the rainbow.</i>	<i>vōluptas, tātis, f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

## EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbors. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbors of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbors is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

Quē, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbors. 7. Every animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

## VIII.—THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs* and the Genitive in *ei*.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	DI- <i>ēs</i> , a day.	DI- <i>ēs</i> , days.	
Gen.	DI- <i>ei</i> , of a day.	DI- <i>ērum</i> , of days.	
Dat.	DI- <i>ei</i> , to or for a day.	DI- <i>ēbūs</i> , to or for days.	
Acc.	DI- <i>em</i> , a day.	DI- <i>ēs</i> , days.	
Voc.	DI- <i>ēs</i> , O day.	DI- <i>ēs</i> , O days.	
Abl.	DI- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from a day.	DI- <i>ēbūs</i> , by, with, or from days.	

All Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dies*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, but always Masculine in the Plural.

The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension is long before *i*, except in *res*, *spes*, and *fides*; see p. 156.

**RULE 8.**—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in*, *in*; as, *hostes in planitie erant*, *the enemies were in the plain*. See Rule 7, p. 14.

## VOCABULARY 15.

<i>acies</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	a line of battle.	<i>spēs</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	hope.
<i>dies</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	day.	<i>creātor</i> , <i>ōria</i> , <i>m.</i>	creator.
<i>facies</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	countenance.	<i>Deus</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>m.</i>	God, a god.
<i>fides</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	faith, fidelity.	<i>domina</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	mistress.
<i>planities</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	a plain.	<i>rārus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ,	rare.
<i>res</i> , <i>rei</i> , <i>f.</i>	a thing.	<i>clārus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ,	clear.
<i>segnities</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>f.</i>	slothfulness.	<i>victōria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	victory.

## EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus\* est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitie.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

\* For declension of *Deus*, see next page.

## IX.—SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

The following words are thus declined :

Dēūs, <i>God</i> (2 Decl.).		Dōmūs, <i>f. a house</i> (2 and 4 Decl.).	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dēūs	Deī, Dī, or Dī	Dōmūs	Dōmūs
<i>Gen.</i> Deī	Deōrum, or Deūm	Dōmūs	Dōmūum, or dōmōrum
<i>Dat.</i> Deō	Deīs, Dīis, or Dīs	Dōmūī	Dōmībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Deum	Deōs	Dōmum	Dōmōs ( <i>rarely dōmūs</i> )
<i>Voc.</i> Dēūs	Deī, Dī, or Dī	Dōmūs	Dōmūs
<i>Abl.</i> Deō	Deīs, Dīis, or Dīs	Dōmō	Dōmībūs

N.B.—The form *domi* is used only in the sense of *at home*, and is probably a Dative.

Bōs, <i>an ox or cow</i> .		Sēnex, <i>an old man</i> .	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Bōs	Bōvēs	Sēnex	Sēnēs
<i>Gen.</i> Bōvis	(Bōvum) or bōum	Sēnis	Sēnum
<i>Dat.</i> Bōvī	Bōbūs, or būbūs	Sēnī	Sēnībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Bōvem	Bōvēs	Sēnom	Sēnēs
<i>Voc.</i> Bōs	Bōvēs	Sēnex	Sēnēs
<i>Abl.</i> Bōvē	Bōbūs, or būbūs	Sēnē	Sēnībūs

Vī, <i>f. strength</i> (3 Decl.).		Jūpītēr (= Jūr-pītēr, <i>i.e. fātēr</i> ), (3 Decl.), ( <i>the god Jupiter</i> ).	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Vī	Vīrēs	Jūpītēr	Jūpītēs
<i>Gen.</i> wanting	Vīrum	Jōvis	Jōvīs
<i>Dat.</i> wanting	Vīribūs	Jōvī	Jōvem
<i>Acc.</i> Vīm	Vīrēs	Jōvem	Jūpītēr
<i>Voc.</i> wanting	Vīrēs	Jūpītēr	Jōvē
<i>Abl.</i> Vī	Vīribūs	Jōvē	

Jusjūrandum, *n. an oath* (properly two words, Jus, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

Sing.
<i>Nom.</i> Jusjūrandum
<i>Gen.</i> Jūrisjūrandi
<i>Dat.</i> Jurijūrandō
<i>Acc.</i> Jusjūrandum
<i>Voc.</i> Jusjūrandum
<i>Abl.</i> Jūrējūrandō

Respublica, *f. a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, Res, 5 Decl., and publica, 1 Decl.).

Sing.
<i>Nom.</i> Respublicā
<i>Gen.</i> Rēipublicae
<i>Dat.</i> Rēipublicae
<i>Acc.</i> Rempublicam
<i>Voc.</i> Respublicā
<i>Abl.</i> Rēpublicā

## VOCABULARY 16.

arbor, ōris, <i>f.</i>	a tree.
bestia, ae, <i>f.</i>	a beast.
cānis, is, <i>c.</i>	a dog.
conscientia, ae, <i>f.</i>	conscience.
cōtilis, e,	feeble.

dīvitiæ, arum, <i>f.</i>	} riches.
(only pl.)	
flūmēn, inis, <i>n.</i>	a current, river.
fortis, e,	strong, brave.
fulmēn, inis, <i>n.</i>	a thunderbolt.



<i>fūnūs, ōris, n.</i>	<i>a funeral.</i>	<i>mortālis, e, mortal.</i>
<i>grāmēn, inis, n.</i>	<i>grass.</i>	<i>Neptūnus, i, m. Neptune.</i>
<i>immortālis, e,</i>	<i>immortal.</i>	<i>paucus, a, um, few.</i>
<i>jūvēnis, is, c.</i>	<i>a young man or woman.</i>	<i>plēnus, a, um, full.</i>
<i>mōnūmentum, i, n. a monument.</i>		<i>(with gen.), }</i>
		<i>silva, ae, f. a wood.</i>

# EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods in ancient times was immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (pl.).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.\* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (pl.) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old men are feeble and sick. 4. The old man gives gold and silver to the young man. 5. The house of the old man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

---

\* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath*.

## X.—SOME GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek Nouns of the First Declension end in *as*, *es*, masculine, and *e* feminine, and differ only in the Singular number from Latin nouns; they are chiefly Proper Names.

Nom. <i>Enē-as</i> ,	<i>Ænēas.</i>	<i>Anchis-es</i> ,	<i>Anchises.</i>
Gen. <i>Enē-a</i> ,	<i>of Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchis-es</i> ,	<i>of Anchises.</i>
Dat. <i>Enē-a</i> ,	<i>to or for Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchis-es</i> ,	<i>to or for Anchises.</i>
Acc. <i>Enē-am</i>	} <i>Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchis-ēn</i> ,	<i>Anchises.</i>
or <i>Enē-ān</i> ,			
Voc. <i>Enē-ā</i> ,	<i>O Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchis-ē</i> or <i>ī</i> ,	<i>O Anchises.</i>
Abl. <i>Enē-ā</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchis-ē</i> or <i>ī</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from Anchises.</i>

REMARK.—The Votive in *a* of Greek Nouns in *as* is long.

NOTE.—More minute variations in the forms of the cases, and the other forms not given here, are not required until the student enters upon his more advanced grammar.

2. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension end in *es*, masculine or feminine, and *en* neuter.

Nom. <i>Dēl-es</i> ,	<i>Delos.</i>	<i>Ilī-ōn</i> ,	<i>Ilum.</i>
Gen. <i>Dēl-i</i> ,	<i>of Delos.</i>	<i>Ilī-ī</i> ,	<i>of Ilum.</i>
Dat. <i>Dēl-ō</i> ,	<i>to or for Delos.</i>	<i>Ilī-ō</i> ,	<i>to or for Ilum.</i>
Acc. <i>Dēl-ōn</i> ,	<i>Delos.</i>	<i>Ilī-ōn</i> ,	<i>Ilum.</i>
Voc. <i>Dēl-ō</i> ,	<i>O Delos.</i>	<i>Ilī-ōn</i> ,	<i>O Ilum.</i>
Abl. <i>Dēl-ō</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from De-</i>	<i>Ilī-ō</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from Ilum.</i>

Proper names in *eus* are sometimes of the Second, sometimes of the Third Declension; thus:

Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
Nom. <i>Orph-eūs</i>		<i>Orph-eū</i> ,	<i>Orpheus.</i>
Gen. <i>Orph-eī</i>		<i>Orph-eōs</i> ,	<i>of Orpheus.</i>
Dat. <i>Orph-eō</i>		<i>Orph-eī</i> or <i>eī</i> ,	<i>to or for Orpheus.</i>
Acc. <i>Orph-eum</i>		<i>Orph-eā</i> ,	<i>Orpheus.</i>
Voc. _____		<i>Orph-eū</i> ,	<i>O Orpheus.</i> [ <i>pheus.</i>
Abl. <i>Orph-eō</i>		_____,	<i>by, with, or from Or-</i>

3. The principal variations in form of Greek Nouns of the Third Declension (besides those in *eus*) consist in forming the Genitive Singular in *os* for *is*; as, *Daphnis*, genitive *Daphnidos*: the Accusative Singular in *ā* for *em*; as, *heros*, accusative *herōā*: the Votive in *ī* for *is*; as, *Daphnis*, vocative *Daphnī*: and the Accusative Plural in *ās* for *ēs*; as, *herōās*.

*Pericles* is thus declined :

<i>Nom.</i> <i>Pericles</i> ,	<i>Pericles.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Periclis</i> and <i>i</i> ,	<i>of Pericles.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Pericli</i>	<i>to or for Pericles.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Periclē</i> and <i>em</i> ,	<i>Pericles.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Periclē</i> and <i>ea</i> ,	<i>O Pericles.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Pericle</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from Pericles.</i>

# XI.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Singular *iūs* (rarely *iūs*), and in the Dative *i* :

<i>ūnus</i> , a, um,	<i>one.</i>	<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.</i> <i>alter, altēra, altērū, one of two, the one, the other.</i> <i>alius, alia, aliud, one of any number, one, another.</i>
<i>sōlus</i> , a, um,	<i>alone.</i>	
<i>tōtus</i> , a, um,	<i>whole.</i>	
<i>ullus</i> , a, um,	<i>any.</i>	
<i>nullus</i> , a, um,	<i>none.</i>	
<i>ūter, utra, utrum</i> ,	<i>which of two.</i>	

For example :

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ūn-us</i>	<i>ŭn-a</i>	<i>ŭn-um*</i>		<i>Ūt-er</i>	<i>utr-a</i>	<i>utr-um</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ūn-iūs</i>				<i>Ūtr-iūs</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ūn-i</i>				<i>Ūtr-i</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ūn-um</i>	<i>ŭn-am</i>	<i>un-um</i>		<i>Ūtr-um</i>	<i>utr-am</i>	<i>utr-um</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ūn-ō</i>	<i>ŭn-ā</i>	<i>ŭn-ō</i>		<i>Ūtr-ō</i>	<i>utr-ā</i>	<i>utr-ō</i>

The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *altērius*, and of *alius* is *aliūs*.

## VOCABULARY 17.

<i>Ænēas</i> , ae, m.	<i>Æneas.</i>	<i>inimicus</i> , a, um,	<i>unfriendly.</i>
<i>Anchīses</i> , ae, m.	<i>Anchises.</i>	<i>laus, laudis</i> , f.	<i>praise.</i>
<i>civitas</i> , ātis, f.	<i>state, citizenship.</i>	<i>mēmōrābilis</i> , e,	<i>to be remembered, memorable.</i>
<i>culpa</i> , ae, f.	<i>blame, fault.</i>	<i>Pericles</i> , is,	<i>Pericles.</i>
<i>Graecus</i> , a, um,	<i>Greek, Grecian.</i>	<i>vērū</i> , a, um,	<i>true.</i>
<i>hōnōr</i> , ōris, m.	<i>an honor.</i>	<i>virtus, ūtis</i> , f.	<i>valor, virtue.</i>
<i>indoctus</i> , a, um,	<i>unlearned.</i>		

## EXERCISE XVII.

1. *Virtus sola veram dat voluptatem.* 2. *Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem.* 3. *Utri dat civitas laudem? Neutri.* 4. *Alii sunt docti, alii indocti.* 5. *Alius vires, alius divitiae sunt magnae.* 6. *Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus.* 7. *Tota Cic-*

\* The Plural of *unus* is regular, but seldom used, only with nouns which have no singular, or have a different signification in singular and plural.

eronis vita memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri laudem, alteri cus-  
pam dant. 9. Ciceroni totam dat laudem. 10. Neutra civi-  
tas habet laudem ullam. 11. Ænēas nautis præmium dat.  
12. Orpheus Musae filius erat.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero  
alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome  
to neither. 4. To which of the two does he give the praise?  
5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives  
true honors. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8.  
Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly  
to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the  
other was troublesome. 11. O Æneas, son of Anchises, the  
Greeks are unfriendly to Ilium. 12. Pericles has the praise  
of valor.

## XII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called  
the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
altus, <i>high</i> .	altior, <i>higher</i> .	altissimus, <i>highest, very high</i> .

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Su-  
perlative by adding *issimus* to the Positive, after taking  
away the termination of the Genitive Singular; as,

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>			
altus,	alt-i,	<i>high,</i>	alt-ior,	alt-issimus,
lēvis,	lēv-is,	<i>light,</i>	lēv-ior,	lēv-issimus,
fēlix,	fēlic-is,	<i>fortunate,</i>	fēlic-ior,	fēlic-issimus,
prūdēns,	prūdēt-is,	<i>prudent,</i>	prūdēt-ior,	prūdēt-issimus.

The Comparative is declined as follows:

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Altior	altius	Altior-ēs	altiōr-ē
<i>Gen.</i>	Altior-is		Altior-um	
<i>Dat.</i>	Altior-i		Altior-ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	Altior-em	altius	Altior-ēs	altiōr-ē
<i>Voc.</i>	Altior	altius	Altior-ēs	altiōr-ē
<i>Abl.</i>	Altior-ē, rarely -ī		Altior-ibus	

The Superlative is declined like *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmus*;

as,

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
pulcher,	<i>beautiful</i> ,	pulchr-ior,	pulcher-rīmus.
liber,	<i>free</i> ,	libēr-ior,	libēr-rīmus.
ācer,	<i>sharp</i> ,	ācr-ior,	ācer-rīmus.
cēler,	<i>swift</i> .	cēlēr-ior,	cēler-rīmus.

Also vētus (*Gen.* vētēr-is), *old*, has a Superlative, vēter-rīmus.II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmus* ; as,

fācilis,	<i>easy</i> ,	fācil-ior,	fācil-līmus.
difficilis,	<i>difficult</i> ,	difficil-ior,	difficil-līmus.
sīmilis,	<i>like</i> ,	sīmil-ior,	sīmil-līmus.
dissīmilis,	<i>unlike</i> ,	dissīmil-ior,	dissīmil-līmus.
grācilis,	<i>thin</i> ,	grācil-ior,	grācil-līmus.
hūmilis,	<i>low</i> ,	hūmil-ior,	hūmil-līmus.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bōnus,	<i>good</i> ,	mēlior,	optīmus.
mālus,	<i>bad</i> ,	pējor,	pessīmus.
magnus,	<i>great</i> ,	mājor,	maxīmus.
parvus,	<i>small</i> ,	mīnor,	mīnīmus.
multus,	<i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plūrīmus.
nēquam,	<i>worthless</i> ,	nēquior,	nēquissīmus.

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

## VOCABULARY 18.

adulatio, onis, <i>f.</i>	<i>flattery.</i>	lēpus, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>a hare.</i>
amābilis, e,	<i>lovely.</i>	lūna, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>the moon.</i>
amor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>love.</i>	lux, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
asper, ēra; ērum,	<i>rough, rugged.</i>	meus,* a, um,	<i>my, mine.</i>
Cato, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cato.</i>	mons, montis, <i>m.</i>	<i>mountain.</i>
dulcis, e,	<i>sweet, delightful.</i>	nihil, indecl. <i>n.</i>	<i>nothing.</i>
ferrum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>iron.</i>	nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
Helvetia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>the country of the Helvetii.</i>	odīum, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>hatred.</i>
hibernus, a, um,	<i>of winter, wintry.</i>	perniciōsus, a, um,	<i>destructive.</i>
imāgo, inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>likeness, image,</i>	quam, conj. and adv.	<i>than, as.</i>
	<i>portrait.</i>	rādix, icis, <i>f.</i>	<i>root.</i>
imprōbus, a, um,	<i>dishonest, wicked.</i>	sāpientia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>wisdom.</i>
iter, itinēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>journey.</i>	semper, adv.	<i>always.</i>
		simulatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>pretense.</i>

\* The Vocative Singular Masculine of *meus* is *mi*.

<i>sonitus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>sound.</i>	<i>suns, a, um,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their</i>
<i>spērātus, a, um,</i>	<i>hoped for.</i>		<i>own.</i>
<i>suāvis, e,</i>	<i>sweet, delight- ful</i>	<i>tuns, a, um,</i>	<i>thy, thine.</i>
		<i>vēr, vēris, n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>
<i>tranquillus, a, um, calm.</i>		<i>vultur, ūris, m.</i>	<i>vulture.</i>

The Superlative must often be translated by *very*.

### EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperrimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*Dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Ro-

manae. 6. *Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum.* 7. *Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria.* 8. *Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium.* 9. *Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator.* 10. *Aquilae vis maxima est.*

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honor to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

### XIII.—THE NUMERALS.

*Cardinal Numerals* denote number simply or absolutely; as, *ūnūs, one*; *dūo, two*; *trēs, three*.

The declension of *ūnūs* is given on p. 29.

*Dūo, trēs, and millĭa, thousands*, are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Du-o	du-ae	du-o	Tres	trĭa	Millĭa
<i>Gen.</i>	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	—	Millĭum
<i>Dat.</i>	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	—	Millĭbus
<i>Acc.</i>	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs or trīs	trĭa	Millĭa
<i>Abl.</i>	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	—	Millĭbus

*Millĕ* in the singular is indeclinable; but it is usually an indeclinable adjective, as *mille homines, mille hominum*.

*Millia* (in pl.) is always a substantive, and is, of course, followed by the Genitive; as, *duo millia hominum*—never *homines*.

The Cardinal Numerals from *quattuōr, four*, to *centum, a hundred*, are indeclinable.

*Dūcentī, ae, ū, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

*Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; as, *prĭmus, first*; *sĕcundus, or altĕr, second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

ARABIO SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus	primus.
2	II	duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter.
3	III	trēs	tertius.
4	IV	quattuor	quartus.
5	V	quinque	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septimus.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus.
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicēsīmus.
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicēsīmus.
20	XX	vīginti	vicēsīmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti ūnus	primus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus primus.
22	XXII	duō et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti duo	alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertius.
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīgēsīmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus.
50	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus.
100	C	centum	centēsīmus.
200	CC	ducentī (ac, ā)	ducentēsīmus.
300	CCC	trecentī	trecentēsīmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus.
500	D <i>or</i> IO	quingentī	quingentēsīmus.
600	DC	sexcentī	sexcentēsīmus.
700	DCC	septingen'ī	septingentēsīmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsīmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī	nongentēsīmus.
1000	M <i>or</i> CIO	millē	millēsīmus.
2000	MM	duō millia	bis millēsīmus.
100,000	CCCIIOO	centum millia	centies millēsīmus.



## VOCABULARY 19.

<b>Alexander, dri, m.</b>	<i>Alexander, king of Macedonia.</i>	<b>mālum, i, n.</b>	<i>an apple.</i>
<b>Augustus, * i, m.</b>	<i>Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.</i>	<b>mānīpūlus, i, m.</b>	<i>a maniple.</i>
<b>centūria, ae, f.</b>	<i>a century (of soldiers).</i>	<b>mensis, is, m.</b>	<i>a month.</i>
<b>cērāsus, i, f.</b>	<i>a cherry-tree.</i>	<b>mītis, e,</b>	<i>mild.</i>
<b>cērāsum, i, n.</b>	<i>a cherry.</i>	<b>ōs, ossis, n.</b>	<i>a bone.</i>
<b>cōhora, tis, f.</b>	<i>a cohort.</i>	<b>pars, partis, f.</b>	<i>a part.</i>
<b>consul, ūlis, m.</b>	<i>a consul.</i>	<b>pīrus, i, f.</b>	<i>a pear-tree.</i>
<b>injustus, a, um,</b>	<i>unjust.</i>	<b>pīrum, i, n.</b>	<i>a pear.</i>
<b>lēgio, ōnis, f.</b>	<i>a legion.</i>	<b>prūnus, i, f.</b>	<i>a plum-tree.</i>
<b>Mācēdo, ōnis, m.</b>	<i>Macedonian.</i>	<b>prūnum, i, n.</b>	<i>a plum.</i>
<b>mālus, i, f.</b>	<i>an apple-tree.</i>	<b>sapiens, ntis,</b>	<i>wise, a wise man,</i>
			<i>a sage.</i>
		<b>Xerxes, is, m.</b>	<i>Xerxes, a king of Persia.</i>

## EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani: primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat tricesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion there were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*Gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*Gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.†

\* The month of August, previously called Sextins, was named after the Emperor Augustus.

† The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XIV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am.*Sum, ſūl, ſūtūrū, eſſē: *to be.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sum,	<i>I am.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Sūmū,	<i>We are.</i>
Es,	thou art.	Estis,	ye or you are.
Est,	he is.	Sunt,	they are.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēram,	<i>I was.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērāmū,	<i>We were.</i>
Ērās,	thou wast.	Ērātis,	ye or you were.
Ērāt,	he was.	Ērant,	they were.

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēro,	<i>I shall be.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērimū,	<i>We shall be.</i>
Ērīs,	thou wilt be.	Ēritis,	ye or you will be.
Ērit,	he will be.	Ērant,	they will be.

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuī,	<i>I have been, or I was.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuīmū,	<i>We have been, or we were.</i>
Fuisti,	thou hast been, or thou wast.	Fuistis,	ye or you have been, or ye or you were.
Fuit,	he has been, or he was.	Fuerunt } or fuerē,	they have been, or they were.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēram,	<i>I had been.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērāmū,	<i>We had been.</i>
Fuērās,	thou hadst been.	Fuērātis,	ye or you had been.
Fuērāt,	he had been.	Fuērant,	they had been.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēro,	<i>I shall have been.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērimū,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
Fuēris,	thou wilt have been.	Fuēritis,	ye or you will have been.
Fuērit,	he will have been.	Fuērint,	they will have been.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Es, <i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estē, <i>Be ye or you.</i>
----------------------------------	---

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Esto, <i>Thou shalt be.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estōtē, <i>Ye or you shall be.</i>
Esto, <i>he shall be, or let him be.</i>	Sunto, <i>they shall be, or let them be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may be.</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>Simūs,</i>	<i>We may be.</i>
<i>sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst be.</i>	<i>ētis,</i>	<i>ye or you may be.</i>
<i>sit,</i>	<i>he may be.</i>	<i>sint,</i>	<i>they may be.</i>

*Obs.* The first and third Person, singular and plural, of the Present-Imperfect Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, *sint cives justi*, *let the citizens be just.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>Essem or</i>	<i>I might be.</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>Essemūs or</i>	<i>We might be.</i>
<i>fōrem,</i>		<i>fōrēmūs,</i>	
<i>Esēs or</i>	<i>thou mightst be.</i>	<i>Esētis or</i>	<i>ye or you might be.</i>
<i>fōrēs,</i>		<i>fōrētis,</i>	
<i>Esēt or</i>	<i>he might be.</i>	<i>Esent or</i>	<i>they might be.</i>
<i>fōrēt,</i>		<i>fōrent,</i>	

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>Fūtūrūs sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to be.</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>Fūtūrī simūs,</i>	<i>We may be about to be.</i>
<i>Fūtūrūs sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst be about to be.</i>	<i>Fūtūrī sītis,</i>	<i>ye or you may be about to be.</i>
<i>Fūtūrūs sīt,</i>	<i>he may be about to be.</i>	<i>Fūtūrī sint,</i>	<i>they may be about to be.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>Fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been.</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>Fuērimūs,</i>	<i>We may have been.</i>
<i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have been.</i>	<i>Fuēritis,</i>	<i>ye or you may have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīt,</i>	<i>he may have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they may have been.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>Fuissem,</i>	<i>I might have been.</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>Fuissemūs,</i>	<i>We might have been.</i>
<i>Fuissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst have been.</i>	<i>Fuissētis,</i>	<i>ye or you might have been.</i>
<i>Fuissēt,</i>	<i>he might have been.</i>	<i>Fuissent,</i>	<i>they might have been.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Esē,</i>	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>Fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Fūtūrūs esē,</i> or <i>fōrē,</i>	<i>to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	<i>Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,</i>	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	--------------------------	---------------------

## SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

A SENTENCE (from the Latin Sententia, *a thought*) is the complete enunciation or expression in words of a thought, and consists of two chief parts, the *Subject* and the *Predicate*.

The SUBJECT (from the Latin Subjectum, *placed beneath*, as the basis, as it were, of the sentence) is that of which something is asserted, which *does, is, or suffers* something. It stands in the Nominative Case, and is either a *substantive* or some *word or phrase used as a substantive*; as, *rosa floret, the rose blooms*; *duo cadunt, two fall*; *errare humanum est, to err is human*.

The PREDICATE (from the Latin Praedicatum, *asserted of the subject*) is that which is asserted of the subject, and is either a *verb*, or an *adjective*, or *substantive* combined with the verb *esse*; as, *rosa floret, rosa pulchra est, rosa flos est*.

The verb *esse*, when thus used, is called the COPULA (*tie or bond*), because it binds, as it were, the Predicate to the Subject.

REMARK.—In such sentences as *Rosa flos est*, *rosa* is called the Subject Nominative, and *flos* the Predicate Nominative.

---

*Exception to Rule of Quantity (on p. 7).*

*Is* final is long in Second Person Singular Present Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation; as, *audis*, and in *velis* (from *volo*) and compounds.

*The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.*

VOCABULARY 20.

attentus, a, um,	attentive.	lætus, a, um,	joyful.
beātus, a, um,	happy.	liber, ēra, ērum,	free.
cārus, a, um,	dear.	mēmor, ōris,	mindful.
contentus, a, um,	contented.	noster, tra, trum,	our, ours.
diligens, ntis,	diligent, careful.	nunc, adv.	now.
dīves, itis,	rich.	pauper, ōris,	poor.
ignāvia, ae, f.	cowardice.	præceptor, ōris, m.	a teacher.
jūs, jūris, n.	right, law.	prōbus, a, um,	good, upright.

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*  
 cālus, ūtis, *f. safety.*  
 sors, sortis, *f. lot.*

Titus, i, m.  
 abbrev. (T.)

tristis, e,

Titus, a common  
 Roman fore-  
 name.  
 sad.

## EXERCISE XX.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erunt pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. You are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented are always joyful; the rich are often sad. 5. If you are good, you are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. You shall be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

*Imperative Mood.*

B.—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli suntō attenti. 4. Iudices justī suntō. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles suntō. 7. Reges patres patriae suntō. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestra. 10. Virtutis praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends. 4. The judge shall be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. Let there be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be virtuous; thou shalt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be free, let them be happy! 10. Let the city be the booty of the soldiers.

## XV.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum, *I am absent.*  
 Adsum, *I am present, stand by, side with.*  
 Dēsum, *I am wanting.*  
 Insum, *I am in.*  
 Intersum, *I am among.*

Obsum,	<i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i>
Praesum,	<i>I am before, am at the head of.</i>
Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>
Subsum,	<i>I am under, or among.</i>
Supersum,	<i>I remain over, survive.</i>

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *d* before *e*; as,

## INDICATIVE.

*Present-Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> Prōsum	<i>Plur.</i> Prō-sūmūs
Prōd-es	Prōd-estis
Prōd-est.	Prō-sunt.

*Past-Imperfect.*

Prōd-eram.

*Future-Imperfect.*

Prōd-ēro.

INFINITIVE.—*Imperfect.*

Prōd-esse.

## VOCABULARY 21.

Animus, i, m.	mind, the soul.	planta, ae, f.	sprout, plant.
auxilium, i, n.	help, aid.	proelium, i, n.	battle.
cupiditas, ātis, f.	desire, passion.		

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variae cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. Cicero was serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sided with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was among his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general

is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

## XVI.—THE PRONOUNS.

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### 1. Pronoun of the First Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ēgō, I.</i>	<i>Nōs,</i>	<i>we.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mēi, of me.</i>	<i>Nostrī and nostrum,</i>	<i>of us.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mihī, to or for me.</i>	<i>Nōbīs,</i>	<i>to or for us.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mē, me.</i>	<i>Nōs,</i>	<i>us. [from us.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mē, by, with, or from me.</i>	<i>Nōbīs,</i>	<i>by, with, or</i>

#### 2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Tū, thou.</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>ye or you.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Tuī, of thee.</i>	<i>Vestri and vestrum,</i>	<i>of you.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Tibi, to or for thee.</i>	<i>Vōbīs,</i>	<i>to or for you.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Tē, thee.</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>you.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Tū, O thou.</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>O ye. [you.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Tē, by, with, or from thee.</i>	<i>Vōbīs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from</i>

#### 3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, eā, id,* is usually employed. (See p. 44.)

### II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence, and can not therefore have a Nominative Case.

NOTE.—The Singular and Plural are alike in form.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Suī, of himself, herself, itself.</i>	<i>Sui,</i>	<i>of themselves.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself.</i>	<i>Sibi,</i>	<i>to or for themselves.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>themselves.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē, by or from himself, herself, itself.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>by, from, or with themselves.</i>

### III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as Adjectives:

## PRONOUNS.

M.	F.	N.	
Meus,	mea,	meum,	<i>my or mine.</i>
Tuus,	tua,	tuum,	<i>thy or thine.</i>
Noster,	nostra,	nostrum,	<i>our, ours.</i>
Vester,	vestra,	vestrum,	<i>your, yours.</i>
Suus,	sua,	suum,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Meus	mea	meum		Mei	meae	mea
<i>Gen.</i>	Mei	meae	mei		Meorum	mearum	meorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Meo	meae	meo		Meis	meis	meis
<i>Acc.</i>	Meum	meam	meum		Meos	meas	mea
<i>Voc.</i>	Mi	mea	meum		Mei	meae	mea
<i>Abl.</i>	Meo	mea	meo		Meis	meis	meis

So, Noster, nostra, nostrum,  
Nostri, nostrae, nostri, etc.

## VOCABULARY 22.

memória, ae, f. *memory.*

| parens, entis, c. a *parent.*

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunt. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria nostri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Let thy native-land be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thy indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general among his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most sad.

## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me), this of mine.*



	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Hic	haec	hoc	Hi	hae	haec	
<i>Gen.</i>	Hūjus			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Huic			Hīs			
<i>Acc.</i>	Hunc	hanc	hoc	Hōs	hās	haec	
<i>Abl.</i>	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs			

2. Istē, istā, istū, *that (near you), that of yours.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
<i>Nom.</i>	Istē	istā	istū	Istī	istae	istā	
<i>Gen.</i>	Istius			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Istī			Istis			
<i>Acc.</i>	Istum	istam	istū	Istos	istas	ista	
<i>Abl.</i>	Istō	istā	istō	Istis			

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
<i>Nom.</i>	Illē	illā	illū	Illī	illae	illā	
<i>Gen.</i>	Illius			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Illī			Illīs			
<i>Acc.</i>	Illum	illam	illū	Illōs	illas	illa	
<i>Abl.</i>	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs			

VOCABULARY 23.

auctoritas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	authority.	ille, illa, illud,	<i>that, the former.</i>
autem, * <i>conj.</i>	but, however.	industrius, a, um,	industrious, busy.
carmen, inis, <i>n.</i>	song, poem.	iners, ertis,	helpless, sluggish.
Dēmōsthēnes, is, <i>m.</i>	Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.	libēri, orum, <i>m. (pl.)</i>	children.
hic, haec, hoc,	this, the latter.		

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste tuus amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista vestra auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

\* The proper position of *autem* is *after* the first word of the clause which it belongs to.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you, Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (ille) is immortal. 9. Those hands of yours are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

#### V. DETERMINATIVE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Determinative—*Is, eă, ȳd, he, she, it, that*, referring to the words of a sentence.

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Is	eă	ȳd	ȳ	eae	eă
Gen.	Ejus			Eŕum	eărum	eŕum
Dat.	Ei			ȳs or eīs		
Acc.	Eum	eam	ȳd	Eŕs	eăs	eă
Abl.	Eŕ	eă	eŕ	ȳs or eīs		

2. *ȳdem, eădem, ȳdem, the same.*

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	ȳdem	eădem	ȳdem	eae dem	eă dem
Gen.	Ejusdem		Eŕundem	eărundem	eŕundem
Dat.	Eȳdem		ȳdem or eisdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	Eŕdem	eădem	eădem
Abl.	Eŕdem	eădem	ȳdem or eisdem		

3. *Ipsŕ, ipsă, ipsum, self, same.*

	Sing.		Plur.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Ipsŕ</b>	<b>ipsă</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>Ipsi</b>	<b>ipseae</b>	<b>ipsă</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Ipsius</b>			<b>Ipsŕum</b>	<b>ipsărum</b>	<b>ipeŕum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Ipsi</b>			<b>Ipsīs</b>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Ipsum</b>	<b>ipsam</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>Ipeŕs</b>	<b>iprăs</b>	<b>ipsă</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Ipeŕ</b>	<b>ipsă</b>	<b>ipeŕ</b>	<b>Ipeis</b>		

4. Relative—*Quȳ, quae, quŕd, who or which.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
<i>Nom.</i>	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	Cūjus			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Cui			Quibus		
<i>Acc.</i>	Quem	quam	quōd	Quos	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	Quō	quā	quō	Quibus		

5. Interrogative—Quis or quī, quae, quid or quōd, *who? which? what?*

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> Quis or quī	quae	quid	Qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> Cūjus		[or quōd	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> Cui		[or quōd	Quibus		
<i>Acc.</i> Quem	quam	quid	Quos	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> Quō	quā	quō	Quibus		

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case; as, *Felix est rex quem omnes cives laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lēgit, (*he, she, it*) reads.

Lēgant, (*they*) read.

#### VOCABULARY 24.

addictus, a, um, devoted.  
 aeternus, a, um, eternal.  
 bellua, ae, f. a great beast.  
 Cimbri, orum, m. the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.  
 cōr, cordis, n. heart.  
 ēlēgans, ntis, elegant, exquisite.  
 fidēlis, e, } faithful.  
 fidus, a, um, }  
 fons, ntis, m. a fountain.

Livius, ii, m. Livy, a Roman historian.  
 luscīnia, ae, f. a nightingale.  
 mūlier, ēris, f. woman, wife.  
 nōn, adv. not.  
 Sallustius, ii, m. Sallust, a Roman historian.  
 salvus, a, um, safe.  
 sanguis, inis, m. blood.  
 scriptor, ōris, m. writer, author.

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est. 4. Ii sunt cives boni qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honors to the bad is hurtful to the state. 4. The wives

of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself. 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow)-citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

B.—1. Quis tibi hunc librum dat? 2. Quis vestrum illi pugnae interfuit? 3. Animal, quod sanguinem habet, cor habet. 4. Leges, quas Persae habent, non sunt sacrae. 5. Quae animalia sunt celerrima et rapacissima? 6. Rex ei magnum praemium dat, qui exercitui praest. 7. Cujus vox suavior est quam (vox) luscinae? 8. Is nobis esto carissimus, qui est optimus. 9. Iis estote amici, qui sunt optimi. 10. Is erit fortissimus, qui ipse suarum cupiditatum victor fuerit.

1. Who survived that battle? 2. What beast has greater strength (pl.) than the elephant? 3. Who of the Romans was more renowned than Cicero? 4. Who was-at-the-head-of that army? 5. Who of Roman writers is more elegant than Livy? 6. (Those)\* who are most faithful to their friends, (ii) are most dear to us. 7. Cicero himself gives the greatest praise to Demosthenes. 8. (Those)\* who are the most daring (ii) are not always the most excellent. 9. The children of the good are not always themselves good. 10. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.

NOTE.—Eadem=*the same things*. The Masculine of adjectives is frequently used to denote *Persons*, the Neuter to denote *Things*: in both cases without a Substantive.

## XVII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices:

I. ACTIVE.

II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have four Moods:

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD.

\* Begin with *qui*, leaving the *ii* till the second clause of the sentence.

Three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs :

- I. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.
- II. The SUPINE, }
- III. The GERUND, } which are Verbal Substantives.

Verbs have six TENSES, three expressing *Imperfect*, or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action :

*Imperfect Tenses.*

- 1. Present.
- 2. Past.
- 3. Future.

*Perfect Tenses.*

- 1. Present.
- 2. Past.
- 3. Future.

*Obs.* The Present-Perfect has also the meaning of an Indefinite Past : thus *amavi* signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the ending of the Imperfect Infinitive Active ; which in,

- I. The First Conjugation ends in *ārē* ; { as, *amārē*, to love.
- II. The Second    “                    “    *ērē* ; { as, *mōnērē*, to advise.
- III. The Third       “                    “    *ērē* ; { as, *rēgērē*, to rule.
- IV. The Fourth     “                    “    *irē* ; { as, *audirē*, to hear.

The Present-Imperfect Indicative, the Present-Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb, because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

## XVIII.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

**Amo, amāvi, amātum, amāre:** *to love.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-o,	<i>I love.</i>	P. Am-amūs,	<i>We love.</i>
Am-ās,	<i>thou lovest.</i>	Am-ātis,	<i>you love.</i>
Am-āt,	<i>he loves.</i>	Am-ant,	<i>they love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ābam,	<i>I was loving.</i>	P. Am-ābāmūs,	<i>We were loving.</i>
Am-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving.</i>	Am-ābātis,	<i>you were loving.</i>
Am-ābāt,	<i>he was loving.</i>	Am-ābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love.</i>	P. Am-ābimūs,	<i>We shall love.</i>
Am-ābis,	<i>thou wilt love.</i>	Am-ābitis,	<i>you will love.</i>
Am-ābit,	<i>he will love.</i>	Am-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-āvī,	<i>I have loved, or I loved.</i>	P. Am-āvimūs,	<i>We have loved, or we loved.</i>
Am-āvistī,	<i>thou hast loved, or thou lovedst.</i>	Am-āvistis,	<i>you have loved, or you loved.</i>
Am-āvit,	<i>he has loved, or he loved.</i>	Am-āvērunt or Am-āvērō,	<i>they have loved, or they loved.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved.</i>	P. Am-āvērāmūs,	<i>We had loved.</i>
Am-āvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Am-āvērātis,	<i>you had loved.</i>
Am-āvērāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>	Am-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-āvē-o,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Am-āvērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Am-āvērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Am-āvēritis,	<i>you will</i>
Am-āvē-īt,	<i>he will</i>	Am-āvērint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.\*

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Amā,	<i>Love thou.</i>	P. Am-ātē,	<i>Love you.</i>
---------	-------------------	------------	------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-āto,	<i>thou shalt love.</i>	P. Am-ātōtē,	<i>you shall love.</i>
Am-āto,	<i>he shall love, or let him love.</i>	Am-anto,	<i>they shall love, or let them love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.\*

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-em,</i>	<i>I may love.</i>	<i>P. Am-ēmūs,</i>	<i>We may love.</i>
<i>Am-ēs,</i>	<i>thou mayest love.</i>	<i>Am-ētis,</i>	<i>you may love.</i>
<i>Am-ēt,</i>	<i>he may love.</i>	<i>Am-ent,</i>	<i>they may love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ārem,</i>	<i>I might love.</i>	<i>P. Am-ārēmūs,</i>	<i>We might love.</i>
<i>Am-ārēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst love.</i>	<i>Am-ārētis,</i>	<i>you might love.</i>
<i>Am-ārēt,</i>	<i>he might love.</i>	<i>Am-ārent,</i>	<i>they might love.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ātūrūs sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>	<i>P. Am-ātūrī simūs,</i>	<i>We may be about to love.</i>
<i>Am-ātūrūs sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst be about to love.</i>	<i>Am-ātūrī sitis,</i>	<i>you may be about to love.</i>
<i>Am-ātūrūs sit,</i>	<i>he may be about to love.</i>	<i>Am-ātūrī sint,</i>	<i>they may be about to love.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āverim,</i>	<i>I may have loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-āverimūs,</i>	<i>We may have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āveris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āveritis,</i>	<i>you may have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āverit,</i>	<i>he may have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āverint,</i>	<i>they may have loved.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āvissem,</i>	<i>I might have loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-āvissēmūs,</i>	<i>We might have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āvissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āvissētis,</i>	<i>you might have loved.</i>
<i>Am-āvissēt,</i>	<i>he might have loved.</i>	<i>Am-āvissent,</i>	<i>they might have loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Am-ārē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>Am-āvissē,</i>	<i>{ to have loved.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātūrum</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
	<i>escē,</i>	

## GERUND.

Gen.	<i>Am-andī,</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
Dat.	<i>Am-andō,</i>	<i>for loving.</i>
Acc.	<i>Am-andum,</i>	<i>the loving.</i>
Abl.	<i>Am-andō,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Am-ātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Am-ātū,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF.	<i>Am-ans,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātūrūs,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>

\* On the translation of the Imperative and Subjunctive Moods, see the Verb *sum*, and p. 59.

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *re* may be omitted before *s* and *r*; as,

āmvistī becomes āmastī	āmvāram becomes āmāram
āmvistis " āmastis	āmvāro " āmāro
āmvērunt " āmārunt	āmvērīm " āmārīm
but āmvērū does not become āmārū,	āmvīseam " āmasseam
which would be confounded with	āmvīsej " āmassej
the Imperfect Infinitive.	

## XIX.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

**Mōnō, mōnūi, mōnītum, mōnērē:** *to advise.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ō,	<i>I advise.</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise.</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest.</i>	Mōn-ētis,	<i>you advise.</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise.</i>

#### 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising.</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising.</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbātis,	<i>you were advising.</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

#### 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise.</i>	P. Mōn-ēbimūs,	<i>We shall advise.</i>
Mōn-ēbis,	<i>thou wilt advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbitis,	<i>you will advise.</i>
Mōn-ēbit,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

#### 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūi,	<i>I have advised, or I</i>	P. Mōn-ūimūs,	<i>We have advised,</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>or we advised.</i>
Mōn-ūistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or</i>	Mōn-ūistis,	<i>you have advised,</i>
	<i>advisedst.</i>		<i>or you advised.</i>
Mōn-ūit,	<i>he has advised, or he</i>	Mōn-ūērunt	<i>they have advised,</i>
	<i>advised.</i>	or -ūērē,	<i>or they advised.</i>

#### 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūeram,	<i>I had advised.</i>	P. Mōn-ūērāmūs,	<i>We had advised.</i>
Mōn-ūērās,	<i>thou hadst advised.</i>	Mōn-ūērātis,	<i>you had advised.</i>
Mōn-ūērāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-ūērant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

#### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūēro,	<i>I shall have advised.</i>	P. Mōn-ūērimūs,	<i>We shall have ad-</i>
			<i>vised.</i>
Mōn-ūēris,	<i>thou wilt have ad-</i>	Mōn-ūēritis,	<i>you will have ad-</i>
	<i>vised.</i>		<i>vised.</i>
Mōn-ūērit,	<i>he will have advised.</i>	Mōn-ūērint,	<i>they will have ad-</i>
			<i>vised.</i>



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-ě**, *Advise thou.* | P. **Mõn-ětě**, *Advise ye or you.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Mõn-ěto**, *Thou shalt advise.* | P. **Mõn-ětõtě**, *Ye or you shall advise.*  
**Mõn-ěto**, *he shall advise, or let him advise.* | **Mõn-ěnto**, *they shall advise, or let them advise.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-eam**, *I may advise.* | P. **Mõn-eāmũs**, *We may advise.*  
**Mõn-eās**, *thou mayst advise.* | **Mõn-eātĩs**, *you may advise.*  
**Mõn-eāt**, *he may advise.* | **Mõn-eant**, *they may advise.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-ěrem**, *I might advise.* | P. **Mõn-ěrēmũs**, *We might advise.*  
**Mõn-ěrēs**, *thou mightst advise.* | **Mõn-ěrētĩs**, *you might advise.*  
**Mõn-ěrēt**, *he might advise.* | **Mõn-ěrent**, *they might advise.*

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-ĩtūrũs** { *I may be about to*  
*advise.* | P. **Mõn-ĩtūrĩ** { *We may be about*  
**Mõn-ĩtūrũs** { *thou mayst be about*  
*to advise.* | **Mõn-ĩtūrĩ** { *you may be about*  
**ěis**, { *to advise.* | **ěĩs**, { *to advise.*  
**Mõn-ĩtūrũs** { *he may be about to*  
*advise.* | **Mõn-ĩtūrĩ** { *they may be about*  
**ěit**, { *advise.* | **sint**, { *to advise.*

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-uěrim**, *I may have advised.* | P. **Mõn-uěrimũs**, *We may have advised.*  
**Mõn-uěrĩs**, *thou mayst have advised.* | **Mõn-uěrītĩs**, *you may have advised.*  
**Mõn-uěrĩt**, *he may have advised.* | **Mõn-uěrĩnt**, *they may have advised.*

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mõn-uissēm**, *I might have advised.* | P. **Mõn-uissēmũs**, *We might have advised.*  
**Mõn-uissēs**, *thou mightst have advised.* | **Mõn-uissētĩs**, *you might have advised.*  
**Mõn-uissēt**, *he might have advised.* | **Mõn-uissent**, *they might have advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. **Mõn-ěrě**, *to advise.*  
 PERFECT. **Mõn-uissě**, { *to have ad-*  
                                       *vised.*  
 FUTURE. **Mõn-ĩtūrũm** { *to be about*  
                                       *ěsě,* { *to advise.*

## GERUND.

Gen. **Mõn-ěndĩ**, *of advising.*  
 Dat. **Mõn-ěndě**, *for advising.*  
 Acc. **Mõn-ěndũm**, *the advising.*  
 Abl. **Mõn-ěndě**, *by advising.*

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.
<b>Mōn-ītum,</b>	<i>to advise.</i>	IMPERF. <b>Mōn-ens,</b> <i>advising.</i>
<b>Mōn-ītū,</b>	<i>to be advised.</i>	FUT. <b>Mōn-ītūrū,</b> <i>about to advise</i>

## XX.—THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē: *to rule.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o,	<i>I rule.</i>	P. Rēg-imūs,	<i>We rule.</i>
Rēg-is,	<i>thou rulest.</i>	Rēg-itis,	<i>you rule.</i>
Rēg-it,	<i>he rules.</i>	Rēg-unt,	<i>they rule.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbam,	<i>I was ruling.</i>	P. Rēg-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were ruling.</i>
Rēg-ēbās,	<i>thou wast ruling.</i>	Rēg-ēbātis,	<i>you were ruling.</i>
Rēg-ēbāt,	<i>he was ruling.</i>	Rēg-ēbant,	<i>they were ruling.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I shall rule.</i>	P. Rēg-ēmūs,	<i>We shall rule.</i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou wilt rule.</i>	Rēg-ētis,	<i>you will rule.</i>
Rēg-ēt,	<i>he will rule.</i>	Rēg-ent,	<i>they will rule.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or I ruled.</i>	P. Rex-imūs,	<i>We have ruled, or we ruled.</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst.</i>	Rex-istis,	<i>you have ruled, or you ruled.</i>
Rex-it,	<i>he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	Rex-erunt or rex-ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled.</i>	P. Rex-erāmūs,	<i>We had ruled.</i>
Rex-erās,	<i>thou hadst ruled.</i>	Rex-erātis,	<i>you had ruled.</i>
Rex-erāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ero,	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>	P. Rex-erimūs,	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>
Rex-eris,	<i>thou wilt have ruled.</i>	Rex-eritis,	<i>you will have ruled.</i>
Rex-erit,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ē,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	P. Rēg-ītē,	<i>Rule ye or you.</i>
-----------	-------------------	-------------	------------------------

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ito,	<i>Thou shalt rule.</i>	P. Rēg-ītōtē,	<i>You shall rule.</i>
Rēg-ito,	<i>he shall rule, or let</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall rule, or</i>
	<i>him rule.</i>		<i>let them rule.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule.</i>	P. Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule.</i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule.</i>	Rēg-ātī,	<i>you may rule.</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ārem,	<i>I might rule.</i>	P. Rēg-ārēmūs,	<i>We might rule.</i>
Rēg-ārēs,	<i>thou mightst rule.</i>	Rēg-ārētī,	<i>you might rule.</i>
Rēg-ārēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-ārent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūrūs	<i>I may be about to</i>	P. Rec-tūrī	<i>We may be about</i>
sī,	<i>rule.</i>	sīmūs,	<i>to rule.</i>
Rec-tūrūs	<i>thou mayst be about</i>	Rec-tūrī	<i>you may be about</i>
sīs,	<i>to rule.</i>	sītīs,	<i>to rule.</i>
Rec-tūrūs	<i>he may be about to</i>	Rec-tūrī	<i>they may be about</i>
sīt,	<i>rule.</i>	sint,	<i>to rule.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ārim,	<i>I may have ruled.</i>	P. Rex-ārimūs,	<i>We may have ruled.</i>
Rex-ārīs,	<i>thou mayst have ruled.</i>	Rex-ārītīs,	<i>you may have ruled.</i>
Rex-ārīt,	<i>he may have ruled.</i>	Rex-ārint,	<i>they may have ruled.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issēm,	<i>I might</i>	P. Rex-issēmūs,	<i>We might</i>
Rex-issēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>	Rex-issētīs,	<i>you might</i>
Rex-issēt,	<i>he might</i>	Rex-issent,	<i>they might</i>
	<i>have ruled.</i>		<i>have ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Rēg-ārē,	<i>to rule.</i>
PERFECT. Rex-issē,	<i>to have ruled.</i>
FUTURE. Rec-tūrum	<i>to be about</i>
essē,	<i>to rule.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. Rēg-endī,	<i>of ruling.</i>
Dat. Rēg-endō,	<i>for ruling.</i>
Acc. Rēg-endum,	<i>the ruling.</i>
Abl. Rēg-endō,	<i>by ruling.</i>

## SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	<i>to rule.</i>
Rec-tū,	<i>to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Rēg-ens,	<i>ruling.</i>
FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs,	<i>about to rule.</i>

## XXI.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

*Audio, audivī, auditum, audirē: to hear.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-io,</i>	<i>I hear.</i>	<i>P. Aud-īmūs,</i>	<i>We hear.</i>
<i>Aud-is,</i>	<i>thou hearest.</i>	<i>Aud-ītis,</i>	<i>you hear.</i>
<i>Aud-it,</i>	<i>he hears.</i>	<i>Aud-iunt,</i>	<i>they hear.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iēbam,</i>	<i>I was hearing.</i>	<i>P. Aud-iēbāmūs,</i>	<i>We were hearing</i>
<i>Aud-iēbās,</i>	<i>thou wast hearing.</i>	<i>Aud-iēbātis,</i>	<i>you were hearing.</i>
<i>Aud-iēbāt,</i>	<i>he was hearing.</i>	<i>Aud-iēbant,</i>	<i>they were hearing.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iam,</i>	<i>I shall hear.</i>	<i>P. Aud-iēmūs,</i>	<i>We shall hear.</i>
<i>Aud-iēs,</i>	<i>thou wilt hear.</i>	<i>Aud-iētis,</i>	<i>you will hear.</i>
<i>Aud-iēt,</i>	<i>he will hear.</i>	<i>Aud-ient,</i>	<i>they will hear.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-ivī,</i>	<i>I have heard, or I</i>	<i>P. Aud-ivīmūs,</i>	<i>We have heard,</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>or we heard.</i>
<i>Aud-ivistī,</i>	<i>thou hast heard, or</i>	<i>Aud-ivistis,</i>	<i>you have heard,</i>
	<i>thou heardst.</i>		<i>or you heard.</i>
<i>Aud-ivīt,</i>	<i>he has heard, or he</i>	<i>Aud-ivērunt</i>	<i>they have heard,</i>
	<i>heard.</i>	<i>or -ivērē,</i>	<i>or they heard.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-ivēram,</i>	<i>I had heard.</i>	<i>P. Aud-ivērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had heard.</i>
<i>Aud-ivērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst heard.</i>	<i>Aud-ivērātis,</i>	<i>you had heard.</i>
<i>Aud-ivērāt,</i>	<i>he had heard.</i>	<i>Aud-ivērant,</i>	<i>they had heard.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-ivēro,</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. Aud-ivērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall</i>
<i>Aud-ivēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>	<i>Aud-ivēritis,</i>	<i>you will</i>
<i>Aud-ivērit,</i>	<i>he will</i>	<i>Aud-ivērint,</i>	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have</i>		<i>have</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-ī,</i>	<i>Hear thou.</i>	<i>P. Aud-ītē,</i>	<i>Hear ye or you.</i>
------------------	-------------------	--------------------	------------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-ito,</i>	<i>thou shalt hear.</i>	<i>P. Aud-itōtē,</i>	<i>You shall hear.</i>
<i>Aud-ito,</i>	<i>he shall hear, or let</i>	<i>Aud-iunto,</i>	<i>they shall hear, or</i>
	<i>him hear.</i>		<i>let them hear.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. And-iam,</i>	<i>I may hear.</i>	<i>P. And-iāmūs,</i>	<i>We may hear.</i>
<i>And-iās,</i>	<i>thou mayst hear.</i>	<i>And-iātis,</i>	<i>you may hear.</i>
<i>And-iāt,</i>	<i>he may hear.</i>	<i>And-iant,</i>	<i>they may hear.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. And-irem,</i>	<i>I might hear.</i>	<i>P. And-irēmūs,</i>	<i>We might hear.</i>
<i>And-irēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst hear.</i>	<i>And-irētis,</i>	<i>you might hear.</i>
<i>And-irēt,</i>	<i>he might hear.</i>	<i>And-irent,</i>	<i>they might hear.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. And-ītūrūs</i>	<i>I may be about to</i>	<i>P. And-ītūrī</i>	<i>We may be about</i>
<i>sim,</i>	<i>hear.</i>	<i>simūs,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
<i>And-ītūrūs</i>	<i>thou mayst be about</i>	<i>And-ītūrī</i>	<i>you may be about</i>
<i>sis,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>	<i>ētis,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
<i>And-ītūrūs</i>	<i>he may be about to</i>	<i>And-ītūrī</i>	<i>they may be about</i>
<i>sit,</i>	<i>hear.</i>	<i>sint,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. And-ivērim,</i>	<i>I may</i>	<i>P. And-ivērimus,</i>	<i>We may</i>
<i>And-ivēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<i>And-ivēritis,</i>	<i>you may</i>
<i>And-ivērīt,</i>	<i>he may</i>	<i>And-ivērint,</i>	<i>they may</i>
	<i>have heard.</i>		<i>have heard.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. And-ivissem,</i>	<i>I might</i>	<i>P. And-ivissēmūs,</i>	<i>We might</i>
<i>And-ivissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst</i>	<i>And-ivissētis,</i>	<i>you might</i>
<i>And-ivissēt,</i>	<i>he might</i>	<i>And-ivissent,</i>	<i>they might</i>
	<i>have heard.</i>		<i>have heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. <i>And-irē,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
PERFECT. <i>And-ivisso,</i>	<i>to have heard.</i>
FUTURE. <i>And-ītūrum</i>	<i>to be about</i>
<i>esse,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. <i>And-iendī,</i>	<i>of hearing.</i>
Dat. <i>And-iendō,</i>	<i>for hearing.</i>
Acc. <i>And-iendum,</i>	<i>the hearing.</i>
Voc. <i>And-iendō,</i>	<i>by hearing.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>And-ītum,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
<i>And-ītū,</i>	<i>to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. <i>And-iens,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE. <i>And-ītūrus,</i>	<i>about to hear.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *i*'s are often contracted into *i*; as,

<i>audivisti</i>	becomes <i>aud'isti</i> or <i>audisti</i>
<i>audivistis</i>	" <i>aud'istis</i> or <i>audistis</i>
<i>audivit</i>	" <i>aud'it</i>
<i>audiverunt</i>	" <i>aud'ierunt</i>
<i>audiveram</i>	" <i>aud'eram</i>
<i>audivēro</i>	" <i>aud'iero</i>

<i>audivērim</i>	becomes <i>aud'ērim</i>
<i>audivissem</i>	" <i>aud'issem</i> or <i>audissem</i>
<i>audivissē</i>	" <i>aud'isē</i> or <i>audisē</i>

*Rules of Quantity.*

**REMARK.**—It is usual to call the syllable or syllables occurring between the verbal stem (as *am-* in *am-are*) and the final syllable the verbal increment; thus, in *am-o*, *am-as*, there is no increment, but in *am-a-mus*, *am-a-ba-mus*, the *a* and *ba* are the increment.

[For convenience the Second Person Singular of the Present Indicative is assumed as the standard, and a verbal form is said to have an increment when it exceeds this in the number of its syllables.]

**a**, in the increment of verbs, is always long, except the first increase of *do*; as, *amāmus*, etc.; but *dābam*, *dāre*, *dābāmus*.

**e**, in the increment of verbs, is long; as, *monēre*, *regēbam*, *amēris*.

**EXCEPTION 1.**—**e** is short in the first increase of every Present and Imperfect of the third conjugation when followed by *r*; as, *regēre*, *regērem*, *regēris*.

**EXCEPTION 2.**—**e** is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, of every conjugation, and in the termination *bēris* or *bēre*.

**i**, in the increment of verbs, is short; as, *amavimus*, *amābitis*, etc.

**EXCEPTION 1.**—**i** is long in the first increase of the fourth conjugation when followed by a consonant; as, *audire*, *auditis*, *audiri*.

*Remark 1.* Verbs of the third conjugation, which form their Perfects in *ivi* and Supines in *itum*, have the *i* of the penult long after the analogy of verbs of the fourth conjugation; as, *peto*, *petivi*, *petitum*.

*Remark 2.* On the other hand, verbs of the fourth conjugation, which make the Perfect after the analogy of the third, as *venire*, *veni*, follow the rule, and have the *i* short; as Perfect *venimus*, while the Present is *venimus*.

**EXCEPTION 2.**—**i** is long in the Present Subjunctive of *sum* and *volo* (and their compounds); as, *simus*, *sitis*, *velimus*, *velitis*.

**o** is long in the increment of verbs; as, *monetōte*.

**u** is long in the Future Participle, as *rectūrus*; short in *sūmus* and *volūmus* (and compounds).

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## VOCABULARY 25 (a).

<b>A.</b> — <i>aedifico</i> (āvi, ) ātum, āre), (	<i>I build.</i>	<i>pāro</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I prepare, make ready, get, gain.</i>
<i>do</i> (dēdi, dātum, dāre),	<i>I give.</i>	<i>recreo</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I refresh.</i>
<i>hābito</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I dwell.</i>	<i>vigilo</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I watch, am awake.</i>
<i>intro</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I enter.</i>	<i>dum</i> (adv.),	<i>while.</i>
<i>laudo</i> (āre, etc.),	<i>I praise.</i>	<i>fraus, fraudis, f.</i>	<i>fraud, dishonesty.</i>

<b>vitūpero</b> (āre, etc.), <i>I blume, find</i>	<b>quum</b> (adv. and conj.), <i>when.</i>
	<b>si</b> (conj.), <i>if.</i>
<b>placidus</b> , a, um, <i>quiet, calm.</i>	<b>somnus</b> , i, m. <i>sleep.</i>
<b>probitas</b> , ātis, f. <i>honesty, integrity.</i>	<b>timor</b> , ōris, m. <i>fear.</i>

## EXERCISE XXV.

*The Present-Imperfect, Past-Imperfect, and Future-Imperfect Tenses, Indicative.*

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honors to good citizens. 4. By virtue they are getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves the enemy (pl.) were watching. 6. We build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to (his) soldiers. 8. You find-fault-with yourself, I (do) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens watched, the soldiers made ready their arms.

*The Present-Perfect, Past-Perfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.*

RULE 11.—When two substantives refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition*; as, Rōmūlŭs, rex Rōmānōrum, *Romulus, king of the Romans.*

## VOCABULARY 25 (a).

<b>B.—ambulo</b> (āre, etc.), <i>I walk.</i>	<b>expugno</b> (are, etc.), <i>I take by storm.</i>
<b>amo</b> (āre, etc.), <i>I love.</i>	<b>fio</b> (are, etc.), <i>I blow.</i>
<b>castigo</b> (are, etc.), <i>I chastise.</i>	<b>jūdico</b> (are, etc.), <i>I judge.</i>
<b>emendo</b> (are, etc.), <i>I improve.</i>	<b>oppugno</b> (are, etc.), <i>I attack, assault.</i>
<b>emigro</b> (are, etc.), <i>I depart from.</i>	<b>orno</b> (are, etc.), <i>I adorn.</i>

vasto (are, etc.), *I lay waste.*  
 aedificium, ii, n. *building.*  
 Corinthus, i, f. *Corinth.*

jam, adv. *now, already.*  
 opulentus, a, um, *wealthy.*  
 ventus, i, m. *wind.*

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris, centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (agri) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of) Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When you have improved (*fut. perf.*) your life, you will have gained for-yourself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you, not found-fault-with you. 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If you have gained for yourself true friends, you are happy.

### Imperative Mood.

#### VOCABULARY 25 (a).

C.—creo (are, etc.), <i>I create, make.</i>	litt̃era, ae, f.	a letter (of the alphabet.)
cūro (are, etc.), <i>I take care, pains.</i>	litt̃erae, ārum, f. pl.	letters, learning; also, an epistle, letter.
fīrmo (are, etc.), <i>I strengthen.</i>	nēmo, inis, * c.	nobody.
mūto (are, etc.), <i>I change.</i>	vālētūdo, inis, f.	health.
pugno (are, etc.), <i>I fight.</i>		
diligenter, adv. <i>carefully.</i>		

NOTE.—Not in prohibitions is always *ne*.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutare, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

\* In place of this genitive *nullius* is used.



1. Enter, O friends! 2. Improve those ill manners, scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. (Do) not change this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (pl.). 6. (Do) not change (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, let the citizens watch. 8. Let good and upright citizens be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing as a fact, present, past, or to be, while the Subjunctive Mood speaks of it as merely entertained by the mind, and dependent on other circumstances. Thus, *Dōmum aedificāvi, aedificābo, I have built a house, I shall build a house*, as facts; *ūt in eā habitem, that I may dwell in it*, the idea or purpose entertained, but not necessarily coming to pass.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 127.

RULE 12.—The Conjunction *ūt, that, in order that*, and *nē, lest, in order that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

*The Present-Imperfect and Past-Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

#### VOCABULARY 25 (b).

D.— <i>dīmīco</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I fight (a battle).</i>	<i>tracto</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I handle, deal with.</i>
<i>exhīlāro</i> (are, etc.)	<i>I cheer.</i>	<i>hērī</i> , adv.	<i>yesterday.</i>
<i>impēro</i> (are, etc.).	<i>I command (gov. dat.).</i>	<i>itā</i> , adv. (from <i>is, id</i> ),	<i>in that way, thus.</i>
<i>libēro</i> (are, etc.)	<i>I free, deliver.</i>	<i>majōres</i> , um, m. p <sup>l</sup> .	<i>ancestors.</i>
<i>opto</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I wish, desire.</i>	<i>rectus</i> , a, um,	<i>straight, right.</i>
<i>rēdāmo</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I love in return.</i>	<i>saepe</i> , adv.	<i>often.</i>
<i>servo</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I preserve, save.</i>	<i>statio</i> , onis, f.	<i>post, station.</i>
		<i>nē</i> (conj. = <i>ut non</i> ),	<i>that not, in order that not.</i>

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in order that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in order that he might improve him. 6. We fight *in order that* the enemy (pl.) may *not* (ne) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms *in order that* the soldiers might *not* enter their lands. 8. We make ready our arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (nos). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in order that others might dwell in them.

RULE 13.—*Quin* is used with the Subjunctive Mood after *nōn dūbīto*, *I do not doubt*; *nēmo dūbītāt*, *no one doubts*; *quis dūbītāt*? *who doubts*? *nōn est dūbīlum*, *it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt*; and is translated in English by *that*.

*The Future-Imperfect, Present-Perfect, and Past-Perfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

VOCABULARY 25 (b).

E.— <i>dēlecto</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I delight,</i>	<i>fortiter</i> , adv.	<i>bravely.</i>
	<i>amuse.</i>	<i>fortissimē</i> , adv.	<i>very bravely.</i>
<i>dūbīto</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I doubt.</i>	<i>Hannibal</i> , ālis, m.	<i>Hannibal, the</i>
<i>erro</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I err, make</i>		<i>great Car-</i>
	<i>a mistake.</i>		<i>thaginian</i>
<i>occūpo</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I seize upon.</i>		<i>general.</i>
<i>sūpéro</i> (are, etc.),	<i>I overcome.</i>	<i>pro</i> , prep. (with abl.),	<i>for, in behalf</i>
<i>dūbīus</i> , a, um,	<i>doubtful.</i>		<i>of.</i>
<i>fīdes</i> , ei, f.	<i>faith, promise.</i>	<i>terror</i> , ōris, m.	<i>terror, alarm.</i>

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint.

2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint. 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnāvissent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnāvisset. 9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit. 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupāvisset.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy had entered the city. 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers have fought bravely. 3. I do not doubt that ye have always praised the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) will overcome the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they had prepared arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy will prepare arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers will take-by-storm the city. 8. Who doubts that our men will fight bravely? 9. There is no doubt that he has improved his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight for (prō with abl.) his native-land?

*Infinitive Mood and Participles.*

**RULE 14.**—The Infinitive Mood is sometimes put as the object of another verb; as, *Caesār hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest*, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

**VOCABULARY 25 (b).**

<b>F.</b> —advento (are, etc.),	<i>I am on the point of arriving.</i>	<b>porto</b> (are, etc.),	<i>I carry.</i>
		<b>āb</b> (ā, abs), ( <i>prep.</i> with abl.),	
<b>canto</b> (are, etc.)	<i>I sing.</i>	<b>interitus</b> , us, m.	<i>destruction.</i>

**Pōtest**, (*he, she, it*) *is able.*

**Possunt**, (*they*) *are able.*

**F.**—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Caesar sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome the enemies. 5. The general entered the city, carrying his sword in his hand. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## VOCABULARY 26.

<b>coerceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I restrain, curb.</i>	<b>plāceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I please (with dat.).</i>
<b>dēbeo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I owe, ought.</i>	<b>ars, artis, f.</b>	<i>art, handi- craft.</i>
<b>dēleo</b> (ēre, ēvi, ētum, 2),	<i>I destroy.</i>	<b>avis, is, f.</b>	<i>a bird.</i>
<b>displīceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I displease (with dat.).</i>	<b>Atheniensis, e, adj.</b>	<i>Athenian.</i>
<b>dōceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I teach (with two acc.).</i>	<b>bēnē, adv.</b>	<i>well.</i>
<b>exerceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I exercise.</i>	<b>Cæsar, æris, m.</b>	<i>Cæsar, the great Roman commander.</i>
<b>fleo</b> (ēre, ēvi, ētum, 2),	<i>I weep.</i>	<b>cantus, us, m.</b>	<i>song.</i>
<b>floreo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I bloom, flourish.</i>	<b>din, adv.</b>	<i>long.</i>
<b>gaudeo*</b> (ēre, gāvīsus } sum, 2),	<i>I rejoice.</i>	<b>dīvīnus, a, um, adj.</b>	<i>belonging to the gods, di- vine.</i>
<b>mereo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I deserve.</i>	<b>Lātinus, a, um, adj.</b>	<i>Latin.</i>
<b>moneo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I advise, warn.</i>	<b>lingua, æ, f.</b>	<i>tongue, lun- guage.</i>
<b>nōceo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I hurt, harm (with dat.).</i>	<b>Pompēius, ii, m.</b>	<i>Pompey, the rival of Cæ- sar.</i>
<b>pāreo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I obey (with dat.).</i>	<b>quīā } quod } conj.</b>	<i>because.</i>
<b>præbeo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I furnish, afford, ex- hibit.</i>	<b>saepissīmo, adv.</b>	<i>very often.</i>
<b>terreo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I terrify, frighten, alarm.</i>	<b>senectus, ūtis, f.</b>	<i>old age.</i>
<b>vāleo</b> (ēre, etc., 2),	<i>I am strong, in good health.</i>	<b>Sōlon, ōnis, m.</b>	<i>Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.</i>
		<b>tēmōritas, ātis, f.</b>	<i>recklessness, rashness.</i>

## EXERCISE XXVI.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monebo, to flebis. 3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus parebant regibus. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudebat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!

1. We shall rejoice, you will weep. 2. The young-man

\* The verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-Passives. (See Exercise XLVII.)

obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites, laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praebuerunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coërcueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his fellow-citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (praebeo) a good example to thy fellow-citizens. 7. Do not destroy the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his fellow-citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that the soldiers entered the

city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*Fut. Part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to\* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

\* *Obs.* To *set* = that I may set: ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by *ut* and the Subjunctive.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

#### VOCABULARY 27.

absūmo (mpai, { mptum, 3), }	<i>I consume, cut off.</i>	ēmo (ēmi, emptum, 3),	<i>I buy.</i>
cingo (axi, netum, 3),	<i>I surround.</i>	instruo (uxi, uctum, 3),	<i>I arrange, draw up in order.</i>
contemno (mpai, { mptum, 3), }	<i>I despise.</i>	jungo (axi, netum, 3),	<i>I join.</i>
contrāho (axi, ac- tum, 3), }	<i>I draw to- gether.</i>	lēgo (lēgi, lectum, 3),	<i>I gather, read.</i>
ecnvolo (āre, etc.),	<i>to fly or rush to- gether.</i>	narro (are, etc.),	<i>I relate.</i>
		pingo (axi, ctum, 3),	<i>I paint, em- broider.</i>
corrigo (exi, ectum, 3),	<i>I correct.</i>	rēgo (xi, ctum, 3),	<i>I rule.</i>
dēfendo (di, sum, 3),	<i>I defend.</i>	scribo (pai, ptum, 3),	<i>I write.</i>
dēzēro (erui, ertum, 3),	<i>I abandon.</i>	solvō (vi, ūtum, 3),	<i>I loosen, I pay.</i>
detēgo (xi, ctum, 3),	<i>I discover.</i>	specto (are, etc.),	<i>I look at, look on.</i>
dīco (xi, ctum, 3),	<i>I say, speak.</i>	tēgo (xi, ctum, 3),	<i>I cover.</i>
disco (didici, no sup., 3),	<i>I learn.</i>	trāho (axi, actum, 3),	<i>I draw, drag.</i>
dūco (xi, ctum, 3),	<i>I lead.</i>	triumpho† (are, etc.),	<i>I triumph.</i>
excōlo (ōlui, ultum, 3),	<i>I cultivate carefully.</i>	vōlo (are, etc.),	<i>I fly.</i>
instituo (ui, ūtum, 3),	<i>I appoint, institute.</i>		

Camillus, i, m.	Camillus, a fa- mous Roman general.	fērē, adv.	almost, common- ly.
Cātilīna, ae, m.	Catiline, a no- torious conspi- rator.	Hellespontus, i, m.	the Hellespont (now the Dar- danelles).
conjurātio, ōnis, f.	conspiracy.	impērātor, ōris, m.	military com- mander.
cōpia, ae, f.	plenty.	in, prep. (with acc.),	into, to.
cōpiae, ārum, f. pl.	forces, troops.	incendium, ii, n.	a fire, conflagration.
currus, ūs, m.	chariot.		

† The triumph (*triumphus*) was a special honor granted by the Senate of Rome to a victorious general.

innūmerus, a, um,	innumerable.	pallium, ii, n.	cloak.
lōcus, i, m., in pl.	} place.	pons, * ntis, m.	bridge.
lōci and lōca,		simul ac (atque),	} as soon as.
mens, mentis, f.	mind.	or, in one word,	
mundus, i, m.	the world.	simulac, conj.	} hardly, scarcely.
obediō, ōnis, f.	siege, blockade.	vix, adv.	
orātiō, ōnis, f.	oration, speech.		

## EXERCISE XXVII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas, et frater pin-gebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (agri, *pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (my) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (my) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (it) is very beautiful (pulcher). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell† me (*Dat.*), (my) son, what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

\* Observe the phrase *jungere flumen ponte*, to throw a bridge over a river.

† The verbs dico, duco, facio, drop the final *e* in the Imperative Mood; hence dic, tell thou; duc, lead thou; fac, do thou.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (*say*, joined the river by a bridge). 6. As soon as I have written (*Fut. Perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (when) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (things).

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solve.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his intellect (*mens*). 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*Fut. Part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*Imperf. Inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

VOCABULARY 28.

custodio (īre, īvi, } itum, 4), }	I guard, keep guard.	finio (īre, etc., 4),	I limit, put an end to.
dormio (īre, etc., 4),	I sleep.	mollio (īre, etc., 4),	I soften, as- suage.
erudio (īre, etc., 4),	I train up, ed- ucate.	mūnio (īre, etc., 4),	I fortify.
firmo (āre, etc., 1),	I strengthen.	pūnio (īre, etc., 4)	I punish.



nescio (īre, ivi, and ii, 4),	I am ignorant of.	finis, is, m.	end, limit; in pl., territo- ries.
nutrio (īre, etc., 4),	I nourish, nur- ture.	gnāviter, adv.	actively, vigor- ously.
obēdio (īre, etc., 4),	I obey (with dat.).	liotor, ōris, m.	a lictor (at- tendant on a Roman mag- istrate).
rēpārio, īre, rēpēri, repertum, 4,	I find.	longinquus, a, um,	long, distant.
scio (īre, etc., 4),	I know.	longinquitās, ātis, f.	length, dis- tance.
sēpēlio, īre, ivi, and ii, sepultum, 4,	I bury.	membrāna, ae, f.	thin skin, mem- brane.
vēnio, īre, vēni, ventum, 4,	I come.	mollis, e,	soft, mellow.
vestio (īre, etc., 4),	I clothe.	mortuus, a, um,	dead.
vincio, īre, vinxi, vinctum, 4,	I bind.	quōque, conj.	also, even.
Alpes, ium (pl.), f.	the Alps.	tenuis, e,	thin, delicate.
Cornēlia, ae, f.	Cornelia, a Roman mat- ron.	turpis, e,	base, disgrace- ful.
crūdēlia, e,	cruel.	vestis, is, f.	clothing.
diligētissimē, adv.	most carefully.	vestimentum, i, n.	
dōlor, ōris, m.	pain, grief.	vinculum, i, n.	chain, bond.
ētiam, conj.	also, even.	vox, vōcis, f.	voice.
Lībya, ae, f.	Africa.		

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunt. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obediunt.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens kept-guard, the soldiers slept. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos dis-

cupulos, qui non obederant. 4. Vincite eos, qui non obdixerunt. 5. Claram vocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audiui. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutraverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*sup.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honor to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (*validus*) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnauiter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnauiter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the intellect of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Fut. Part.*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (*animus\**). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (*dolorem iramque*). 10. (He) who knows not (*nescio*) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

---

\* Use the Singular.

## XXII.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, ämätüs sum or fui, ämärî: to be loved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ör,	<i>I am loved.</i>	P. Am-ämür,	<i>We are loved.</i>
Am-äris or äm-äre, }	<i>thou art loved.</i>	Am-äminî,	<i>you are loved.</i>
Am-ätür,	<i>he is loved.</i>	Am-antür,	<i>they are loved.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-äbär,	<i>I was being loved.</i>	P. Am-äbämür,	<i>We were being loved.</i>
Am-äbäris or äm-äbäre, }	<i>thou wast being loved.</i>	Am-äbäminî,	<i>you were being loved.</i>
Am-äbätür,	<i>he was being loved.</i>	Am-äbantür,	<i>they were being loved.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-älör,	<i>I shall be loved.</i>	P. Am-älimür,	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
Am-älöris or äm-älöre, }	<i>thou wilt be loved.</i>	Am-äliminî,	<i>you will be loved.</i>
Am-älütür,	<i>he will be loved.</i>	Am-äluntür,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs sum or fui, }	<i>I have been loved, or was loved.</i>	P. Am-ätî sümüs or fuimüs, }	<i>We have been loved, or were loved.</i>
Am-ätüs ös or fuistî, }	<i>thou hast been loved, or wast loved.</i>	Am-ätî ertîs or fuistîs, }	<i>you have been loved, or were loved.</i>
Am-ätüs ert or fult, }	<i>he has been loved, or was loved.</i>	Am-ätî sunt, fuérunt, or fuërë, }	<i>they have been loved, or were loved.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs eram or fuëram, }	<i>I had been loved.</i>	P. Am-ätî eramüs or fuëramüs, }	<i>We had been loved.</i>
Am-ätüs éräs or fuëräs, }	<i>thou hadst been loved.</i>	Am-ätî ärätîs or fuërätîs, }	<i>you had been loved.</i>
Am-ätüs érat or fuërat, }	<i>he had been loved.</i>	Am-ätî érant or fuërant, }	<i>they had been loved.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs éro or fuëro, }	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>	P. Am-ätî érimüs or fuërimüs, }	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
Am-ätüs éris or fuëris, }	<i>thou wilt have been loved.</i>	Am-ätî éritîs or fuëritîs, }	<i>you will have been loved.</i>
Am-ätüs érit or fuërit, }	<i>he will have been loved.</i>	Am-ätî érunnt or fuërint, }	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Am-ārē, Be thou loved. | P. Am-āminī, Be ye or you loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Am-ātōr, Thou shalt be loved. | P. Am-āntōr, They shall be loved,  
Am-ātōr, he shall be loved, or let | or let them be loved.  
him be loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ēr,</i>	<i>I may be loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We may be loved.</i>
<i>Am-ērīs or } ām-ārē, } Am-ētūr,</i>	<i>thou mayst be loved. he may be loved.</i>	<i>Am-ēmīnī, Am-entūr,</i>	<i>you may be loved. they may be loved.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ārēr,</i>	<i>I might be loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-ārēmūr,</i>	<i>We might be loved.</i>
<i>Am-ārērīs or } ām-ārērē, } Am-ārētūr,</i>	<i>thou mightst be loved. he might be loved.</i>	<i>Am-ārēmīnī, Am-ārentūr,</i>	<i>you might be loved. they might be loved.</i>

## 3. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ātūs sim } or fuērīm, } Am-ātūs sis } or fuērīs, } Am-ātūs sit } or fuērīt, }</i>	<i>I may have been loved. thou mayst have been loved. he may have been loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-ātī eīmūs } or fuērīmūs, } Am-ātī sitīs } or fuērītīs, } Am-ātī sint } or fuērīnt, }</i>	<i>We may have been loved. you may have been loved. they may have been loved.</i>
--	---	---	---

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ātūs essem } or fuīsem, } Am-ātūs essēs } or fuīssēs, } Am-ātūs essēt } or fuīssēt, }</i>	<i>I might have been loved. thou mightst have been loved. he might have been loved.</i>	<i>P. Am-ātī essēmūs } or fuīssēmūs, } Am-ātī essētī } or fuīssētīs, } Am-ātī essent } or fuīssent, }</i>	<i>We might have been loved. you might have been loved. they might have been loved.</i>
--	---	---	---

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Am-ārī,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>Am-ātum (am, um) essē or fuissē,</i>	<i>to have been loved.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātum irī,</i>	<i>to be about to be loved</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	<i>Am-ātūs (a, um),</i>	<i>loved, or having been loved.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	<i>Am-andiūs (a, um),</i>	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

## XXIII.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneōr, mōnlītūs sum or fui, mōnēri: to be advised.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eōr,	I am advised.	P. Mōn-ēmūr,	We are advised.
Mōn-ēris or } mōn-ērē,	thou art advised.	Mōn-ēminī,	you are advised.
Mōn-ētūr,	he is advised.	Mōn-entūr,	they are advised.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbār,	I was being advised.	P. Mōn-ēbāmūr,	We were being advised.
Mōn-ēbāris or } mōn-ēbārē,	thou wast being advised.	Mōn-ēbāminī,	you were being advised.
Mōn-ēbātūr,	he was being advised.	Mōn-ēbantūr,	they were being advised.

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbōr,	I shall be advised.	P. Mōn-ēbimūr,	We shall be advised.
Mōn-ēbāris or } mōn-ēbārē,	thou wilt be advised.	Mōn-ēbimīnī,	you will be advised.
Mōn-ēbitūr,	he will be advised.	Mōn-ēbuntūr,	they will be advised.

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs sum or fui,	I have been advised, or was advised.	P. Mōn-īti sūmūs or fuimūs,	We have been advised, or were advised.
Mōn-ītūs ēs or fuistī,	thou hast been advised, or wast advised.	Mōn-īti estīs or fuistīs,	you have been advised, or were advised.
Mōn-ītūs est or fuit,	he has been advised, or was advised.	Mōn-īti sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	they have been advised, or were advised.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēram or fuēram,	I had been advised.	P. Mōn-īti ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	We had been advised.
Mōn-ītūs ērās or fuērās,	thou hadst been advised.	Mōn-īti ērātīs or fuērātīs,	you had been advised.
Mōn-ītūs ērāt or fuērāt,	he had been advised.	Mōn-īti ērant or fuērant,	they had been advised.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēro or fuērō,	I shall have been advised.	P. Mōn-īti ērimūs or fuērimūs,	We shall have been advised.
Mōn-ītūs ēris or fuēris,	thou wilt have been advised.	Mōn-īti ēritīs or fuēritīs,	you will have been advised.
Mōn-ītūs ērit or fuērit,	he will have been advised.	Mōn-īti ērunt or fuērint,	they will have been advised.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Mōn-āiā*, *Be thou advised.*P. *Mōn-āmini*, *Be ye or you advised.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. *Mōn-ētōr*, *Thou shalt be advised.**Mōn-ētōr*, *he shall be advised, or  
let him be advised.*P. *Mōn-entōr*, *They shall be ad-  
vised, or let them  
be advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Mōn-eār*,*Mōn-eāris or  
mōn-eārē,  
Mōn-eātūr,**I may be ad-  
vised.  
thou mayst be  
advised.  
he may be ad-  
vised.*P. *Mōn-eāmūr*,*Mōn-eāmini,  
Mōn-eantūr,**We may be ad-  
vised.  
you may be ad-  
vised.  
they may be ad-  
vised.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Mōn-ērē*,*Mōn-ērēris or  
mōn-ērērē,  
Mōn-ērētūr,**I might be ad-  
vised.  
thou mightst be  
advised.  
he might be ad-  
vised.*P. *Mōn-ērēmūr*,*Mōn-ērēmini,  
Mōn-ērentūr,**We might be  
advised.  
you might be  
advised.  
they might be  
advised.*

## 3. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mōn-itūs sim  
or fuērim,  
Mōn-itūs sis  
or fuēris,  
Mōn-itūs sit  
or fuērit,**I may have been  
advised.  
thou mayst have  
been advised.  
he may have  
been advised.**P. Mōn-itī simūs,  
or fuērimūs,  
Mōn-itī sitis  
or fuēritis,  
Mōn-itī sint  
or fuērint,**We may have  
been advised.  
you may have  
been advised.  
they may have  
been advised.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mōn-itūs essem  
or fuissem,**Mōn-itūs essēs  
or fuissēs,**Mōn-itūs essēt  
or fuissēt,**I might have  
been advised.  
thou mightst  
have been ad-  
vised.  
he might have  
been advised.**P. Mōn-itī essēmūs  
or fuissēmūs,**Mōn-itī essētis  
or fuissētis,**Mōn-itī essent  
or fuissent,**We might have  
been advised.  
you might have  
been advised.  
they might have  
been advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. *Mōn-ēri*,*to be advised.*PERFECT. *Mōn-itum (am, um), esse or fuissē*,*to have been advised.*FUTURE. *Mōn-itum iri*,*to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *Mōn-itūs (a, um),**advised, or having been advised.*GERUNDIVE. *Mōn-cādūs (a, um),**fit to be advised.*

## XXIV.—THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectūs sum or fui, rēgī: to be ruled.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr,	<i>I am ruled.</i>	P. Rēg-īmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
Rēg-ēris or	<i>thou art ruled.</i>	Rēg-īmini,	<i>you are ruled.</i>
rēg-ēre,		Rēg-untūr,	<i>they are ruled.</i>
Rēg-ītūr,	<i>he is ruled.</i>		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbār,	<i>I was being ruled.</i>	P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being ruled.</i>
Rēg-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast being ruled.</i>	Rēg-ēbāmini,	<i>you were being ruled.</i>
rēg-ēbāre,		Rēg-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being ruled.</i>
Rēg-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being ruled.</i>		

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>	P. Rēg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
Rēg-ēris or	<i>thou wilt be ruled.</i>	Rēg-ēmini,	<i>you will be ruled.</i>
rēg-ēre,		Rēg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
Rēg-ētūr,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>		

## 4. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	<i>I have been ruled,</i>	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	<i>We have been</i>
or fui,	<i>or was ruled.</i>	or fuimūs,	<i>ruled, or were</i>
Rec-tūs es or	<i>thou hast been</i>	Rec-tī estis or	<i>you have been</i>
fuisti,	<i>ruled, or wast</i>	fuistis,	<i>ruled, or were</i>
Rec-tūs est or	<i>he has been ruled,</i>	Rec-tī sunt,	<i>they have been</i>
fuit,	<i>or was ruled.</i>	fuērunt, or	<i>ruled, or were</i>
		fuērē,	<i>ruled.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	P. Rec-tī ērāmūs	<i>We had been</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	<i>ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ēris	<i>thou hadst been</i>	Rec-tī ērātis	<i>you had been</i>
or fuērās,	<i>ruled.</i>	or fuērātis,	<i>ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ērāt	<i>he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērant	<i>they had been</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	<i>ruled.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	<i>I shall have been</i>	P. Rec-tī ērimūs	<i>We shall have</i>
or fuēro,	<i>ruled.</i>	or fuērimūs,	<i>been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ēris	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	Rec-tī ēritis	<i>you will have</i>
or fuēris,	<i>ruled.</i>	or fuēritis,	<i>been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ērit	<i>he will have been</i>	Rec-tī ērunt	<i>they will have</i>
or fuērit,	<i>ruled.</i>	or fuērint,	<i>been ruled.</i>

D

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ērē, Be thou ruled. | P. Rēg-īmīnī, Be ye or you ruled.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

*S. Rēg-ītōr, Thou shalt be ruled. | P. Rēg-untōr, They shall be ruled,  
Rēg-ītōr, he shall be ruled, or let | or let them be ruled.  
him be ruled.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ār,</i>	<i>I may be ruled.</i>	<i>P. Rēg-āmūr,</i>	<i>We may be ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-ārīs or }</i>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<i>Rēg-āmīnī,</i>	<i>you may be</i>
<i>rēg-ārē, }</i>	<i>ruled.</i>		<i>ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-ātūr,</i>	<i>he may be ruled.</i>	<i>Rēg-antūr,</i>	<i>they may be</i>
			<i>ruled.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ērēr,</i>	<i>I might be ruled.</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ērēmūr,</i>	<i>We might be</i>
			<i>ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-ērērīs or }</i>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<i>Rēg-ērēmīnī,</i>	<i>you might be</i>
<i>rēg-ērērē, }</i>	<i>ruled.</i>		<i>ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-ērētūr,</i>	<i>he might be ruled.</i>	<i>Rēg-ērētūr,</i>	<i>they might be</i>
			<i>ruled.</i>

## 3. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rec-tūs sim }</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>P. Rec-tī simūs }</i>	<i>We may have</i>
<i>or fuērīm, }</i>	<i>ruled.</i>	<i>or fuērīmūs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>
<i>Rec-tūs sis }</i>	<i>thou mayst have</i>	<i>Rec-tī sītīs or }</i>	<i>you may have</i>
<i>or fuērīs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>	<i>fuērītīs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>
<i>Rec-tūs sit }</i>	<i>he may have been</i>	<i>Rec-tī sint or }</i>	<i>they may have</i>
<i>or fuērīt, }</i>	<i>ruled.</i>	<i>fuērīnt, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rec-tūs essem }</i>	<i>I might have been</i>	<i>P. Rec-tī essemūs }</i>	<i>We might have</i>
<i>or fuīssēm, }</i>	<i>ruled.</i>	<i>or fuīssēmūs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>
<i>Rec-tūs essēs }</i>	<i>thou mightst have</i>	<i>Rec-tī essētīs }</i>	<i>you might have</i>
<i>or fuīssēs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>	<i>or fuīssētīs, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>
<i>Rec-tūs essēt }</i>	<i>he might have</i>	<i>Rec-tī essent }</i>	<i>they might have</i>
<i>or fuīssēt, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>	<i>or fuīssent, }</i>	<i>been ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Rēg-ī,</i>	<i>to be ruled.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>Rec-tum (am, um) essē or fuīssē,</i>	<i>to have been ruled.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Rec-tum īrī,</i>	<i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	<i>Rec-tūs (a, um),</i>	<i>ruled, or having been ruled.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	<i>Rēg-endūs (a, um),</i>	<i>fit to be ruled.</i>



## XXV.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, audītus sum or fui, audiri: to be heard.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iōr,	I am heard.	P. Aud-iāmūr,	We are heard.
Aud-iris or }	thou art heard.	Aud-imini,	you are heard.
aud-irē,		Aud-iuntūr,	they are heard.
Aud-ītūr,	he is heard.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbār,	I was being heard.	P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	We were being heard.
Aud-iēbāris or }	thou wast being heard.	Aud-iēbāmini,	you were being heard.
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	they were being heard.
Aud-iēbātūr,	he was being heard.		

## 3. FUTURE-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	I shall be heard.	P. Aud-iēmūr,	We shall be heard.
Aud-iēris or }	thou wilt be heard.	Aud-iēmīni,	you will be heard.
aud-iērē,		Aud-ientūr,	they will be heard.
Aud-iētūr,	he will be heard.		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ītus sum	I have been heard, or was heard.	P. Aud-iti sūmus	We have been heard, or were heard.
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Aud-ītus es	thou hast been heard, or wast heard.	Aud-iti estis	you have been heard, or were heard.
or fuisti,		or fuistis,	
Aud-ītus est	he has been heard, or was heard.	Aud-iti sunt,	they have been heard, or were heard.
or fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ītus eram	I had been heard.	P. Aud-iti ērāmūs	We had been heard.
or fueram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Aud-ītus erās	thou hadst been heard.	Aud-iti ērātis,	you had been heard.
or fuērās,		or fuērātis,	
Aud-ītus erāt	he had been heard.	Aud-iti erant	they had been heard.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ītus ero	I shall have been heard.	P. Aud-iti ērimūs	We shall have been heard.
or fuero,		or fuērimūs,	
Aud-ītus eris	thou wilt have been heard.	Aud-iti eritis	you will have been heard.
or fuēris,		or fuēritis,	
Aud-ītus erit	he will have been heard.	Aud-iti erunt	they will have been heard.
or fuērit,		or fuērint,	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Aud-irē*, *Be thou heard.*P. *Aud-īmīni*, *Be ye or you heard.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. *Aud-ītōr*, *Thou shalt be heard.**Aud-ītōr*, *he shall be heard, or let him be heard.*P. *Aud-iuntōr*, *They shall be heard, or let them be heard.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Aud-iār*,*I may be heard.*P. *Aud-iāmūr*,*We may be heard.**Aud-iāris* or  
*aud-iārē*,*thou mayst be heard.**Aud-iāmīni*,*you may be heard.**Aud-iātūr*,*he may be heard.**Aud-iantūr*,*they may be heard.*

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Aud-irēr*,*I might be heard.*P. *Aud-irēmūr*,*We might be heard.**Aud-irēris* or  
*aud-irērē*,*thou mightst be heard.**Aud-irēmīni*,*you might be heard.**Aud-irētūr*,*he might be heard.**Aud-irentūr*,*they might be heard.*

## 3. PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Aud-ītūs sim* }*I may have been heard.*P. *Aud-ītī simūs* }*We may have been heard.**Aud-ītūs sis* }*thou mayst have been heard.**Aud-ītī eitis* }*you may have been heard.**Aud-ītūs sit* }*he may have been heard.**Aud-ītī sint* }*they may have been heard.*

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Aud-ītūs essem* }*I might have been heard.*P. *Aud-ītī essemūs* }*We might have been heard.**Aud-ītūs esSES* }*thou mightst have been heard.**Aud-ītī esSētis* }*you might have been heard.**Aud-ītūs esSēt* }*he might have been heard.**Aud-ītī essent* }*they might have been heard.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. *Aud-iri*,*to be heard.*PERFECT. *Aud-ītum (am, um) esse* or *fuissē*,*to have been heard.*FUTURE. *Aud-ītum iri*,*to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *Aud-ītūs (a, um)*,*heard, or having been heard.*GERUNDIVE. *Aud-iendūs (a, um)*,*fit to be heard.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

**RULE 15.**—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative: if the ablative expresses a living being, the preposition *ā* or *ab* is prefixed; as, *māgistēr puērū laudāt*, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, *puēr ā māgistrō laudātūr*, *the boy is praised by the master*.

## VOCABULARY 29.

<i>ēdūco</i> (āre, etc., 1),	<i>I educate.</i>	<i>grāviter</i> , adv.	<i>heavily, severely.</i>
<i>ēdūco</i> (xi, etum, 3),	<i>I lead out.</i>	<i>Lycurgus</i> , i, m.	<i>Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.</i>
<i>fūgo</i> (āre, etc., 1),	<i>I put to flight.</i>	<i>Trōja</i> , ae, f.	<i>Troy, the city of Priam.</i>
<i>vulnēro</i> (āre, etc., 1),	<i>I wound.</i>	<i>Vesta</i> , ae, f.	<i>Vesta, the Roman goddess of fire and of the hearth.</i>
<i>Antiochus</i> , i, m.	<i>Antiochus, a name of kings of Syria.</i>	<i>virtus</i> , ūtis, f.	<i>valor, virtue, good quality.</i>
<i>ēgrēgius</i> , a, um,	<i>excellent, eminent.</i>		

## EXERCISE XXIX.

**A.**—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attenti a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulce non est. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (parō) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

**B.**—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edūcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4.

Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnât, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Let arms be made-ready; let the gates of the city be strengthened. 7. The general takes-care that the gates should be strengthened. 8. Let not the good be blamed; let not the bad be praised! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

### VOCABULARY 30.

māneo (nai, nsum, 2), *I remain.*  
 mōveo (ōvi, ōtum, 2), *I move, disturb.*  
 timeo (ui, no sup., 2), *I fear.*  
 adventus, ūs, m. *arrival.*  
 strēnuus, a, um, *vigorous.*

kēro, ōniz, m. *Nero, a Roman family name.*  
 strēnuē, adv. *vigorously.*  
 stūdiū, ii, n. *zeal, pursuit, study.*  
 sūbitus, a, um, *sudden.*

### EXERCISE XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exerceor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnæviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified (at) his (ejus) arrival (abl.). 7. Nero was grievously feared by all the citizens.

8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. Let the bodies of the children be actively exercised. 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He-was-taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take care that the boys are carefully taught. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified at his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took care that we should be carefully taught. 8. I have taken care that my sons should be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful of (all) things; take care that it is diligently exercised.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## VOCABULARY 31.

<b>affigo, ixi, ictum, 3,</b>	<i>I cast down, I prostrate.</i>	<b>Phaëthon, cntis, m.</b>	<i>Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.</i>
<b>cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3,</b>	<i>I cultivate, cherish, etc.</i>	<b>rtūdeo, ui, 2,</b>	<i>I am eager, zealous.</i>
<b>dīlgo, lexi, lectum, 3,</b>	<i>I esteem, I love.</i>	<b>vēho, exi, ectum, 3,</b>	<i>I carry; in Pass., I ride.</i>
<b>figo, nxi, fictum, 3,</b>	<i>I frame, feign, invent.</i>	<b>vinco, vīci, victum, 3,</b>	<i>I conquer.</i>
<b>elādes, is, f.</b>	<i>disaster, defeat.</i>	<b>prōbe, adv.</b>	<i>rightly, properly.</i>
<b>fābūla, ae, f.</b>	<i>fable, story.</i>	<b>rātio, onis, f.</b>	<i>reason.</i>
<b>nōbīlia, e,</b>	<i>distinguished.</i>	<b>Scīpio, onis, m.</b>	<i>Scipio, a Roman noble name.</i>
<b>perversus, a, um,</b>	<i>willful, perverse.</i>	<b>vēhēmenter, adv.</b>	<i>vehemently, warmly.</i>
<b>quīdem, conj.</b>	<i>indeed.</i>		

## EXERCISE XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (*Say, The River Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.*)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.\* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.\* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*Dat.*) what (quae, neuter plural) was written (*Pres. Perf. Subj.\**) to thee. 8. He told me (*Dat.*) what (quae) had been written (*Past-Perf. Subj.\**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

\* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 127.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## VOCABULARY 32.

<b>cādo, cecidi, cāsum, 3, I fall.</b>	<b>lāpideus, a, um, of stone.</b>
<b>āēr, āēris, m. the air.</b>	<b>negōtium, ii, n. a thing, business.</b>
<b>Africānus, i, m. Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.</b>	<b>pellis, is, f. skin (of an animal).</b>
<b>rogñitio, ōnis, f. knowledge, inquiry.</b>	<b>prius, adv. sooner, before.</b>
<b>īrūdītus, a, um, trained, educated.</b>	<b>Pūnicus, a, um, Punic, Carthaginian.</b>
<b>Gracchus, i, m. Gracchus, a Roman family name.</b>	<b>Sōcrātes, is, m. Socrates, the sage of Athens.</b>
<b>īnjustē, adv. unjustly.</b>	<b>sōlum, adv. only.</b>
<b>justē, adv. justly.</b>	<b>summus, a, um, highest, utmost, greatest.</b>
<b>lāpis, idis, m. a stone.</b>	<b>Tībērius, ii, m. Tiberius, a common Roman fore-name (cont. Ti.).</b>

## EXERCISE XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo puniuntur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finientur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*Past-Imp. Pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*Adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honors. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (*nostra*) will be found exceedingly-short (*Sup.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*Fut.-Perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and made strong with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue excerceretur, probe excolere-

tur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me gnaviter custodita sit.

1. Let the boys be carefully trained. 2. Let not the boys be trained by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well-trained boys love their master.

## XXVI.—THIRD CONJUGATION (*mixed with the Fourth*):

**Căpio, cēpī, captum, cāpērē:** *to take.*

### I. ACTIVE VOICE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. *Present-Imperfect Tense.*

<i>S. Căp-io,</i>	<i>I take.</i>	<i>P. Căp-īmūs,</i>	<i>We take.</i>
<i>Căp-is,</i>	<i>thou takest.</i>	<i>Căp-ītis,</i>	<i>you take.</i>
<i>Căp-īt,</i>	<i>he takes.</i>	<i>Căp-iunt,</i>	<i>they take.</i>

##### 2. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*

<i>S. Căp-iēbam,</i>	<i>I was taking.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iēbāmūs,</i>	<i>We were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iēbās,</i>	<i>thou wast taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iēbātis,</i>	<i>you were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iēbāt,</i>	<i>he was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iēbant,</i>	<i>they were taking.</i>

##### 3. *Future-Imperfect Tense.*

<i>S. Căp-iam,</i>	<i>I shall take.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iēmūs,</i>	<i>We shall take.</i>
<i>Căp-iēs,</i>	<i>thou wilt take.</i>	<i>Căp-iētis,</i>	<i>you will take.</i>
<i>Căp-iēt,</i>	<i>he will take.</i>	<i>Căp-ient,</i>	<i>they will take.</i>

##### 4. *Present-Perfect Tense.*

<i>Cēp-i,</i>	<i>I have taken, or I took,</i>	like	<b>rexī.</b>
---------------	---------------------------------	------	--------------

##### 5. *Past-Perfect Tense.*

<i>Cēp-eram,</i>	<i>I had taken,</i>	like	<b>rexēram</b>
------------------	---------------------	------	----------------

##### 6. *Future-Perfect Tense.*

<i>Cēp-ero,</i>	<i>I shall have taken,</i>	like	<b>rexēro.</b>
-----------------	----------------------------	------	----------------



SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-iam, I may take.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iămus, We may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăa, thou mayst take.</i>	<i>Căp-iătia, you may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăt, he may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iant, they may take.</i>

2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ărem, I might take.</i>	<i>P. Căp-ăremă, We might take.</i>
<i>Căp-ărea, thou mightst take.</i>	<i>Căp-ăreătia, you might take.</i>
<i>Căp-ăreăt, he might take.</i>	<i>Căp-ărent, they might take.</i>

3. Present-Perfect Tense.

<i>Căp-ărim,</i>	<i>I may have taken,</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>rexărim.</i>
------------------	--------------------------	-------------	-----------------

4. Past-Perfect Tense.

<i>Căp-isseam,</i>	<i>I might have taken,</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>rexisseam.</i>
--------------------	----------------------------	-------------	-------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ě, Take thou.</i>	<i>P. Căp-ită, Take ye or you.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------------------

Future Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ito, Thou shalt take.</i>	<i>P. Căp-ităte, You shall take.</i>
<i>Căp-ito, he shall take, or let him take.</i>	<i>Căp-iunto, they shall take, or let them take.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect. Căp-ăre,</i>	<i>to take.</i>
<i>Perfect. Căp-isse,</i>	<i>{ to have taken.</i>
<i>Future. Cap-tūrum</i>	<i>{ to be about to take.</i>
<i>esse,</i>	

GERUND.

<i>Gen. Căp-iendi,</i>	<i>of taking.</i>
<i>Dat. Căp-iendo,</i>	<i>for taking.</i>
<i>Acc. Căp-iendum,</i>	<i>the taking.</i>
<i>Abl. Căp-iendo,</i>	<i>by taking.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Cap-tum,</i>	<i>to take.</i>
<i>Cap-tu,</i>	<i>to be taken.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect. Căp-iena,</i>	<i>taking.</i>
<i>Future. Cap-tūrus,</i>	<i>about to take.</i>

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-lor, I am taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-imūr, We are taken.</i>
<i>Căp-ăris</i>	<i>Căp-imīni, you are taken.</i>
<i>or -ăre,</i>	
<i>Căp-itūr, he is taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iuntūr, they are taken.</i>

# 84 THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH FOURTH.

## 2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-iēbar,</i>	<i>I was being taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iēbāmūr,</i>	<i>We were being taken.</i>
<i>Căp-iēbāris or cap-iēbāre,</i>	<i>thou wast being taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iēbāmini,</i>	<i>you were being taken.</i>
<i>Căp-iēbātūr,</i>	<i>he was being taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iēbantūr,</i>	<i>they were being taken.</i>

## 3. Future-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-iar,</i>	<i>I shall be taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iēmūr,</i>	<i>We shall be taken.</i>
<i>Căp-iēris or cap-iēre,</i>	<i>thou wilt be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iēmīni,</i>	<i>you will be taken.</i>
<i>Căp-iētūr,</i>	<i>he will be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-ientūr,</i>	<i>they will be taken.</i>

## 4. Present-Perfect Tense.

<i>Cap-tus sum or fui,</i>	<i>{ I have been taken, or I was taken,</i>	<i>like { rectus sum or fui.</i>
----------------------------	---	----------------------------------

## 5. Past-Perfect Tense.

<i>Cap-tus eram or fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been taken,</i>	<i>like { rectus eram or fuēram.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------------

## 6. Future-Perfect Tense.

<i>Cap-tus ero or fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been taken,</i>	<i>like { rectus ero or fuero.</i>
------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### 1. Present-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-iar,</i>	<i>I may be taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iāmūr,</i>	<i>We may be taken.</i>
<i>Căp-iāris or cap-iāre,</i>	<i>thou mayst be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iāmīni,</i>	<i>you may be taken.</i>
<i>Cap-iātūr,</i>	<i>he may be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-iantūr,</i>	<i>they may be taken.</i>

### 2. Past-Imperfect Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ērer,</i>	<i>I might be taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-ērēmūr,</i>	<i>We might be taken.</i>
<i>Căp-ērēris or cap-ērēre,</i>	<i>thou mightst be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-ērēmīni,</i>	<i>you might be taken.</i>
<i>Căp-ērētūr,</i>	<i>he might be taken.</i>	<i>Căp-ērentūr,</i>	<i>they might be taken.</i>

### 3. Present-Perfect Tense.

<i>Cap-tus sim or fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been taken,</i>	<i>like { rectus sim or fuērim.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

### 4. Past-Perfect Tense.

<i>Cap-tus essem or fuissem,</i>	<i>I might have been taken,</i>	<i>like { rectus essem or fuissem.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ērē,</i>	<i>Be thou taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-īmini,</i>	<i>Be ye or you taken.</i>
--------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	----------------------------

### Future Tense.

<i>S. Căp-ītōr,</i>	<i>Thou shalt be taken.</i>	<i>P. Căp-iuntōr,</i>	<i>They shall be taken,</i>
<i>Căp-ītōr,</i>	<i>he shall be taken, or let him be taken.</i>		<i>or let them be taken.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<b>Cāp-i,</b>	<i>to be taken.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>Cap-tum (am, um) esse or fuisse,</b>	<i>to have been taken.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>Cap-tum iri,</b>	<i>to be about to be taken.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>Cap-tus (a, um),</b>	<i>taken, or having been taken.</i>
<i>Gerundive.</i>	<b>Cāp-iendus (a, um),</b>	<i>fit to be taken.</i>

Obs. The Verbs conjugated like *cāpio* are :

<i>fācio,</i>	<i>fēcī,</i>	<i>factum,</i>	<i>fāc-ŕ,</i>	<i>to make.</i>
<i>jācio,</i>	<i>jēcī,</i>	<i>jactum,</i>	<i>jāc-ŕe,</i>	<i>to throw.</i>
<i>fūgio,</i>	<i>f-ŕ,</i>	<i>fūg-tum,</i>	<i>fūg-ŕ,</i>	<i>to flee.</i>
<i>fodio,</i>	<i>fōdī,</i>	<i>fossū,</i>	<i>fōd-ŕ,</i>	<i>to dig.</i>
<i>rāpio,</i>	<i>rāpū,</i>	<i>raptum,</i>	<i>rāp-ŕe,</i>	<i>to seize.</i>
<i>pārio,</i>	<i>p-ŕ,</i>	<i>partum,</i>	<i>pāc-ŕe,</i>	<i>to bring forth.</i>
<i>quātio,</i>	(no perfect),	<i>quassū,</i>	<i>quā-ŕe,</i>	<i>to shake.</i>
<i>cūpio,</i>	<i>cūpī,</i>	<i>cūpitum,</i>	<i>cūp-ŕe,</i>	<i>to desire.</i>
<i>sāpio,</i>	<i>s-ŕ,</i>	—	<i>sāp-ŕe,</i>	<i>to savor of, be wise.</i>
<i>lācio,</i>	—	—	<i>lāc-ŕe,</i>	<i>to draw, } rare, except in</i>
<i>sp-ŕ,</i>	—	—	<i>sp-ŕe,</i>	<i>to look, } composition.</i>

## VOCABULARY 33.

<b>absurdus, a, um,</b>	<i>out of tune, absurd.</i>	<b>margārita, ae, f.</b>	<i>a pearl.</i>
<b>bōna, ōrum, n. (pl.),</b>	<i>goods.</i>	<b>necessārius, a, um,</b>	<i>necessary, need-ful.</i>
<b>celsus, a, um,</b>	<i>lofty, tall.</i>	<b>nīdus, i, m.</b>	<i>a nest.</i>
		<b>versus, us, m.</b>	<i>a line, a verse.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find minerals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole roation savors-of the poets (*Acc.*).

*Deponent Verbs* have a Passive form,

- I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör.  
 II. Vêreör, vêritüs sum, vêrêri, to fear, " moneör.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	I.		II.		
	<i>Pres.-Imp.</i>	Hort-ör, Hort-äris (äre), &c.	<i>I exhort.</i> } <i>thou exhortest.</i> } &c.	<i>Vër-eör,</i> <i>Vër-ëris</i> <i>(ërë),</i> &c.	<i>I fear.</i> } <i>thou fearest.</i> } &c.
	<i>Past-Imp.</i>	Hort-äbär,	<i>I was exhorting.</i>	<i>Vër-ëbär,</i>	<i>I was fearing.</i>
	<i>Fut.-Imp.</i>	Hort-äbör,	<i>I shall exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-ëbör,</i>	<i>I shall fear.</i>
	<i>Pres.-Perf.</i>	Hort-ätüs sum,	<i>I have exhort- ed or I exhort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs</i> sum,	<i>I have feared or I feared.</i>
	<i>Past-Perf.</i>	Hort-ätüs ëram,	<i>I had exhort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs</i> ëram,	<i>I had feared.</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Hort-ätüs ëro,	<i>I shall have ex- hort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs</i> ëro,	<i>I shall have feared.</i>	
SUMJUNCTIVE MOOD.	<i>Pres.-Imp.</i>	Hort-ër,	<i>I may exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-eär,</i>	<i>I may fear.</i>
	<i>Past-Imp.</i>	Hort-ärër,	<i>I might exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-ërër,</i>	<i>I might fear.</i>
	<i>Fut.-Imp.</i>	Hort-ätürüs sim,	<i>I may be about to exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-îtürüs</i> sim,	<i>I may be about to fear.</i>
	<i>Pres.-Perf.</i>	Hort-ätüs sim,	<i>I may have ex- hort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs</i> sim,	<i>I may have feared.</i>
	<i>Past-Perf.</i>	Hort-ätüs essem,	<i>I might have ex- hort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs</i> essem,	<i>I might have feared.</i>
IMPERATIVE.	<i>Present.</i>	Hort-ärê,	<i>Exhort thou.</i>	<i>Vër-êrê,</i>	<i>Fear thou.</i>
	<i>Future.</i>	Hort-ätör,	<i>thou shalt ex- hort.</i>	<i>Vër-ëtör,</i>	<i>thou shalt fear.</i>
INFINITIVE.	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Hort-äri,	<i>to exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-ëri,</i>	<i>to fear.</i>
	<i>Perfect.</i>	Hort-ätum essê,	<i>to have exhort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtum</i> essê,	<i>to have feared.</i>
	<i>Future.</i>	Hort-ätürum essê,	<i>to be about to exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-îtürüm</i> essê,	<i>to be about to fear.</i>
PARTICIPLES.	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Hort-ans,	<i>exhorting.</i>	<i>Vër-ens,</i>	<i>fearing.</i>
	<i>Future.</i>	Hort-ätürüs,	<i>about to exhort.</i>	<i>Vër-îtürüs,</i>	<i>about to fear.</i>
	<i>Perfect.</i>	Hort-ätüs,	<i>having exhort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtüs,</i>	<i>having feared.</i>
	<i>Gerundive.</i>	Hort-andüs,	<i>fit to be ex- hort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-endüs,</i>	<i>fit to be feared.</i>
SUPINES.		Hort-ätum, Hort-ätü,	<i>to exhort. to be exhort- ed.</i>	<i>Vër-îtum,</i> <i>Vër-îtü,</i>	<i>to fear. to be feared.</i>
GERUND.		Hort-andi, &c.	<i>of exhorting, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Vër-endi,</i> &c.	<i>of fearing, &amp;c.</i>

Besides the Passive forms the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that can express directly a Perfect Participle Active; as, hortätüs, *having exhort-  
ed*.

but an Active meaning.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtus sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partiōr, partūtus sum, partīrī, to divide, " audiōr.

III.		IV.		INDICATIVE MOOD.
<i>Pres.-Imp.</i> Lōqu-ōr, Lōqu-ērīs (ērē), &c.	<i>I speak.</i> } <i>thou speakest.</i> } &c.	<i>Part-iōr,</i> <i>Part-irīs</i> (irē), &c.	<i>I divide.</i> } <i>thou dividest.</i> } &c.	
<i>Past-Imp.</i> Lōqu-ebār, <i>Fut.-Imp.</i> Lōqu-ār, <i>Pres.-Perf.</i> Lōcū-tūs sum, <i>Past-Perf.</i> Lōcū-tūs eram, <i>Fut.-Perf.</i> Lōcū-tūs ēro,	<i>I was speaking.</i> <i>I shall speak.</i> } <i>I have spoken</i> } <i>or I spoke.</i> <i>I had spoken.</i> <i>I shall have</i> <i>spoken.</i>	<i>Part-iēbār,</i> <i>Part-iār,</i> <i>Part-itūs</i> sum, <i>Part-itūs</i> eram, <i>Part-itūs</i> ēro,	<i>I was dividing.</i> <i>I shall divide.</i> } <i>I have divided</i> } <i>or I divided.</i> <i>I had divided.</i> <i>I shall have di-</i> <i>vided.</i>	
<i>Pres.-Imp.</i> Lōqu-ār, <i>Past-Imp.</i> Lōqu-ērēr, <i>Fut.-Imp.</i> Lōcū-tūrūs sīm, <i>Pres.-Perf.</i> Lōcū-tūs sīm, <i>Past-Perf.</i> Lōcū-tūs essem,	<i>I may speak.</i> <i>I might speak.</i> } <i>I may be about</i> } <i>to speak.</i> <i>I may have</i> } <i>spoken.</i> <i>I might have</i> } <i>spoken.</i>	<i>Part-iār,</i> <i>Part-irēr,</i> <i>Part-itūrūs,</i> sīm, <i>Part-itūs</i> sīm, <i>Part-itūs</i> essem,	<i>I may divide.</i> <i>I might divide.</i> } <i>I may be about</i> } <i>to divide.</i> <i>I may have di-</i> } <i>vided.</i> <i>I might have</i> } <i>divided.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Present.</i> Lōqu-ērē, <i>Future.</i> Lōqu-ītōr,	<i>Speak thou.</i> } <i>thou shalt</i> } <i>speak.</i>	<i>Part-irē,</i> <i>Part-ītōr,</i>	<i>Divide thou.</i> } <i>thou shalt di-</i> } <i>vide.</i>	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Imperfect.</i> Lōqu-ī, <i>Perfect.</i> Lōcū-tum essē, <i>Future.</i> Lōcū-tūrum essē,	<i>to speak.</i> } <i>to have spoken.</i> } <i>to be about to</i> } <i>speak.</i>	<i>Part-irī,</i> <i>Part-itum</i> essē, <i>Part-itūrum</i> essē,	<i>to divide.</i> } <i>to have divided.</i> } <i>to be about to</i> } <i>divide.</i>	INFINITIVE.
<i>Imperfect.</i> Lōqu-ens, <i>Future</i> Lōcū-tūrūs, <i>Perfect.</i> Lōcū-tūs, <i>Gerundive.</i> Lōqu-endūs,	<i>speaking.</i> <i>about to speak.</i> <i>having spoken.</i> <i>fit to be spoken.</i>	<i>Part-iens,</i> <i>Part-itūrūs,</i> <i>Part-itūs,</i> <i>Part-iendūs,</i>	<i>dividing.</i> <i>about to divide.</i> <i>having divided.</i> <i>fit to be divided.</i>	PARTICIPLES.
<i>SUPINES.</i> Lōcū-tum, Lōcū-tū, <i>GERUND.</i> Lōqu-endī, &c.	<i>to speak.</i> <i>to be spoken.</i> <i>of speaking,</i> &c.	<i>Part-itum,</i> <i>Part-itū,</i> <i>Part-iendi,</i> &c.	<i>to divide.</i> <i>to be divided.</i> <i>of dividing,</i> &c.	

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponents that ever have a passive meaning.  
Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

## VOCABULARY 34.

admīror, āri, ātus, 1, <i>I wonder at, I admire.</i>	mīror, etc., 1, <i>I wonder at, admire.</i>
asperor, āri, 1, <i>I reject, despise.</i>	vērōror, etc., 1, <i>I reverence, worship.</i>
conor, etc., 1, <i>I attempt.</i>	demum, adv. <i>indeed.*</i>
contemplor, etc., 1, <i>I observe carefully, I contemplate.</i>	pōtestas, ātis, f. } <i>power.†</i>
hortor, etc., 1, <i>I urge, exhort, encourage.</i>	pōtentia, ae, f. }
mēdītor, etc., 1, <i>I meditate on, study.</i>	quīdam, quaedam, } <i>a certain, one, certain.</i>
	quoddam, or quiddam, }
	tum, adv. <i>then.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

*Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation.*

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quam aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate-on these things every-day. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at last will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*Fut.-Perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (*ea, n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

## VOCABULARY 35.

fāteor, fassus, 2, <i>I confess.</i>	intueor, itus, 2, <i>I look upon, into.</i>
īmītor, etc., 1, <i>I imitate.</i>	rēcorder, etc., 1, <i>I call to mind.</i>
polliceor, citus, 2, <i>I promise.</i>	mīserēor, itus, 2, <i>I pity, have pity on.</i>

\* As tum demum, then indeed, then and not till then.

† Potestas is the regular power of a magistrate; potentia, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

accipio, * cēpi, cep- tum, 3, } <i>I receive.</i>	ex, e, prep. (with abl.), out of, from.
confiteor, * fessus, 2, <i>I confess.</i>	facinus, ōria, n. a bold, dar- ing deed, crime.
dācipio, * cēpi, cep- tum, 3, } <i>I deceive.</i>	Plinius, ii, m. Pliny, name of two Ro- man writers (Elder and Younger).
ejicio, * jēci, jec- tum, 3, } <i>I cast forth.</i>	
tueor, itus, 2, <i>I gaze, guard, protect.</i>	praetēritus, a, um, past. reus, i, m. an accused man, a de- fendant.
vēreor, itus, 2, <i>I fear, rever- ence.</i>	senectus, ūtis, f. old age.
Asia, ae, f. Asia.	
Darius, ii, m. Darius, a Per- sian royal name.	

## EXERCISE XXXV.

*Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

**RULE 16.**—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit; nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scele-  
rum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper misero-  
rum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. There is no doubt that the generals have promised (*Subj.*) rewards to the soldiers. 7. He has confessed the crime, and shall be punished. 8. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 9. Ye will call these things to mind, citizens, when I am cast forth (*Fut.-Perf.*) from the city. 10. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 11. He reverences the gods.

\* Observe the change of *ā* to *i* when a preposition is prefixed in com-  
position; as, accipio = ad + cēpio; confiteor = con + fāteor, etc.

## VOCABULARY 36.

abūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3,	<i>I abuse.</i>	cāseus, i, m.	<i>cheese.</i>
adhortor, etc., 1,	<i>I urge, exhort.</i>	consulātus, uz, m.	<i>office of consul, consulate.</i>
adīpiscor, adeptus, 3,	<i>I acquire, attain to.</i>	cruciātus, us, m.	<i>torture.</i>
allōquor, locūtus, 3,	<i>I speak to, address.</i>	Eurīpides, is, m.	<i>Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.</i>
committo, mīsi, missum, 3,	<i>I send together, join battle (fight).</i>	immortalitas, ātis, f.	<i>immortality.</i>
deflāgro, etc., 1,	<i>to be burnt down.</i>	Lābiēnus, i, m.	<i>Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.</i>
fruo, frūtus, and fructus, 3,	<i>I enjoy.</i>	lac, lactis, n.	<i>milk.</i>
fungor, functus, 3,	<i>I discharge.</i>	lācus, us, m.	<i>a lake.</i>
gero, gessi, gestum, 3,	<i>I carry on, wage.</i>	laetitia, ae, f.	<i>joy.</i>
hābeo, bui, bitum, 2,	<i>I have.</i>	Mēnārij, orum, m.	<i>the Menapii, a Gallic tribe.</i>
incūso, etc., 1,	<i>I accuse, find fault with.</i>	mox, adv.	<i>soon, shortly.</i>
jūbeo, jussi, jussum, 2,	<i>I order, bid.</i>	mūnus, ōris, n.	<i>duty, function.</i>
lōquor, locūtus, 3,	<i>I speak.</i>	nēvē, conj. (with subj.),	<i>nor, and lest.</i>
mōrior, mortuus, 3,	<i>I die.</i>	nīmīs, adv.	<i>too, too much.</i>
nascor, natus, 3,	<i>I am born.</i>	pēr, prep. (with acc.),	<i>through.</i>
obliscor, litus, 3,	<i>I forget.</i>	poena, ae, f.	<i>punishment.</i>
pātior, passus, 3,	<i>I endure, suffer.</i>	Poeni, orum, m.	<i>the Carthaginians.</i>
prōfisciscor, fectus, 3,	<i>I set out.</i>	pristinus, a, um,	<i>former, olden.</i>
remīniscor (no perf.), 3,	<i>I remember.</i>	rāro, adv.	<i>seldom.</i>
sequor, secūtus, 3,	<i>I follow.</i>	Rēgulus, i, m.	<i>Regulus, a Roman commander.</i>
utor, ūsus, 3,	<i>I use.</i>	Sālāmis, ins, f.	<i>Salamis, an island near Athens.</i>
vescor (no perf.), 3,	<i>I feed, live on.</i>	tantum, adv.	<i>only.</i>
ad, prep. (with acc.),	<i>to, at, near.</i>	Trāsimēnus, i, m.	<i>Trasimenus, a lake in Italy.</i>
alligando, adv.	<i>sometimes.</i>		
apud, prep. (with acc.),	<i>at, near.</i>		
bēnignē, adv.	<i>kindly.</i>		
cāro, carnis, f.	<i>flesh.</i>		

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

## Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—*Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vecor* govern the Ablative Case.

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus.  
 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruuntur. 4. Virtutis viam semper se-



quemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungere! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur suo munere.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. Who doubts that by this death he has obtained immortal glory? 3. It is a small thing to enjoy life; it is a great thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take care that you always follow the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body is dead (*Fut.-Perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*Past-Imperf.*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the utmost freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse them. 10. Follow us; *we* will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci jubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) ancient valor, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to-speak-kindly-to (one's) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall-be-carrying-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

## VOCABULARY 37.

blandior, itus, iri, }	I flutter, win	exp̄rior, ertus, 4, I try, experience.
4 (with dat.), }	upon.	civ̄lis, e, belonging to a citi-
mētior, mensus, 4, I measure.		izen, civil.

mentior, itus, 4,	<i>I lie.</i>	pōtior, itus, 4 }	<i>I obtain possession of.</i>
Epāminondas, ae, m.	<i>Epaminondas, a famous Theban.</i>	(with abl. or gen.)	
ordior, orsus, 4,	<i>I begin.</i>	fortūna, ae, f.	<i>fortune.</i>
partior, itus, 4,	<i>I share, divide.</i>	frons, ntis, f.	<i>forehead, brow.</i>
		nunquam, adv.	<i>never.</i>
		vultus, us, m.	<i>countenance, looks.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

*Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. There is no doubt that it is extremely-base (*Superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (pl.) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us make-trial-of our valor; let us get-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

## XXVIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions, some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ad,	<i>to.</i>	Ergā,	<i>toward.</i>
Adversū,	} <i>toward.</i>	Extrā,	<i>outside of.</i>
Adversum,		Infrā,	<i>below.</i>
Antē,	<i>before.</i>	Intē,	<i>between, among.</i>
Apud,	<i>near, at.</i>	Intrā,	<i>inside of, within.</i>
Circā,	<i>circum, around.</i>	Juxtā,	<i>near.</i>
Circitēr,	<i>about.</i>	Ob,	<i>on account of.</i>
Cis and citrā,	<i>on this side of.</i>	Pēnēs,	<i>in the power of.</i>
Contrā,	<i>against, contrary to.</i>	Fē-	<i>through.</i>

<b>Pōnē,</b> <i>behind.</i>	<b>Secundum,</b> <i>following, in accordance</i>
<b>Post,</b> <i>after.</i>	<b>Suprā,</b> <i>above.</i> [with.
<b>Præter,</b> <i>beside.</i>	<b>Trans,</b> <i>across.</i>
<b>Prōpē,</b> <i>near.</i>	<b>Ultrā,</b> <i>on the farther side of.</i>
<b>Propter,</b> <i>on account of.</i>	<b>Versus,</b> <i>toward.</i>

Versus is put after the word it governs.

## VOCABULARY 38.

<b>fluō, fluxi, fluxum,</b> 3, <i>I flow.</i>	<b>mētus, us, m.</b> <i>fear.</i>
<b>migrō,</b> etc., 1, <i>I migrate, de-</i>	<b>occidens, ntis, m.</b> <i>the west (the set-</i>
	<i>ting sun).</i>
<b>vivo, vixi, victum,</b> 3, <i>I live.</i>	<b>permulti, ae, ā,</b> <i>very many.</i>
<b>aestas, ātis, f.</b> <i>summer.</i>	<b>primō, adv.</b> <i>at first.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Iudices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fluit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army toward the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge according to the laws. 8. We shall dwell within the city, but you will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

## II. With the Ablative alone.

<b>Ā, āb, or abs,</b> <i>by or from.</i>	<b>Ex or ē,</b> <i>out of.</i>
<b>Absquē</b> (rare), <i>without.</i>	<b>Præ,</b> <i>before, in comparison with.</i>
<b>Cōram,</b> <i>in the presence of.</i>	<b>Prō,</b> <i>before, for, in behalf of.</i>
<b>Cum,</b> <i>with.</i>	<b>Sinē,</b> <i>without.</i>
<b>Dē,</b> <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	<b>Tēnūs,</b> <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Tēnūs is put after the word it governs.

## VOCABULARY 39.

<i>divido, vīsi, vīsum, 3, I divide, separate.</i>	<i>Germāni, orum, m. the Germans.</i>
<i>cāteri (caet.), ae, ā, } the rest, all others.</i>	<i>Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian. [tenant.</i>
	<i>lēgātus, i, m. ambassador, lieu-</i>
	<i>ocēānus, i, m. the ocean.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicerone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi, quid scripserim. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenuis vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum\*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He was dwelling in the same city, without-the-knowledge-of his father.

## III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

<i>In, in, into.</i>	<i>Super, over.</i>
<i>Sub, up to, under; of time, about.</i>	<i>Subter, under.</i>
<i>Clam, secretly, without the knowledge of.</i>	

*In* and *Sub*, with the *Acc.*, answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

## VOCABULARY 40.

<i>fulgeo, lsi, lsum, 2, I shine.</i>	<i>Aegyptus, i, f. Egypt.</i>
<i>profero, tūli, lātum, } I extend.</i>	<i>impērium, ii, n. empire.</i>
<i>ferre,</i>	<i>marmor, ōris, n. marble.</i>
<i>Indi, orum, m. the Indians, people of India.</i>	<i>servitus, ūtis, f. slavery.</i>
	<i>tābernāculum, i, n. tent.</i>
	<i>uxor, oris, f. wife.</i>

\* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*, are used instead of *cum* me, cum te, etc.

## EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago Solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth there are many beautiful things. 10. Toward winter these birds migrate into other lands.

## XXIX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declension end in *-ē*, as *doctē*, *learnedly*, from *doctus*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in *-tēr*, as *fortitēr*, *bravely*, from *fortis*.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *ius*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.	
	<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
doctus,	<i>learned.</i>	doctē,	<i>learnedly.</i>
liber,	<i>free.</i>	libērē,	<i>freely.</i>
pulcher,	<i>beautiful.</i>	pulchrē,	<i>beautifully.</i>
fortis,	<i>brave.</i>	fortiter,	<i>bravely.</i>
similis,	<i>like.</i>	similiter,	<i>alike.</i>
acer,	<i>keen.</i>	acriter,	<i>keenly.</i>
felix,	<i>lucky.</i>	feliciter,	<i>luckily.</i>
prudens,	<i>prudent.</i>	prudenter,	<i>prudently.</i>

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.	
	<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bonus,	<i>good.</i>	bēnē,	<i>well.</i>
malus,	<i>bad.</i>	mālē,	<i>ill.</i>
multus,	<i>much, many.</i>	multum,	<i>much.</i>
magnus,	<i>great.</i>		
propinquus,	<i>near.</i>	prōpe,	<i>near, nearly.</i>
(prō),	<i>before.</i>		

## VOCABULARY 41.

excedo, cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I approach.</i>	Hasdrūbal, ālis, m. <i>Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal (a common Carthaginian name).</i>
āgo, ēgi, actum, 3, <i>I lead, act, do.</i>	
excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I depart from.</i>	jūventus, ūtis, f. <i>youth.</i>
incipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3, <i>I begin.</i>	lātē, adv. <i>widely, wide.</i>
perdo, didi, ditum, 3, <i>I destroy.</i>	longē, adv. <i>far.</i>
resisto, stiti, stitum, } <i>I resist.</i>	Roscius, ii, m. <i>Roscius, a Roman name.</i>
3 (with dat.),	
ac, conj. <i>and.</i>	rātē, adv. <i>enough, sufficiently.</i>
atque, conj. <i>and.</i>	
attentē, adv. <i>attentively.</i>	tigris, is and Idie, c. <i>a tiger.</i>
audaciter, adv. <i>boldly, daringly.</i>	

## EXERCISE XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnauerunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vinctur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10.

Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much; it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

### XXX.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

#### I. Possum, pōtūī, postē: to be able, can.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present-Imperfect.		2. Past-Imperfect.	
S. Pos-sum	Pos-sim	S. Pōt-eram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis	Pōt-erās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-ēt	Pos-sit	Pōt-erāt	Pos-sēt
P. Pos-simūs	Pos-simūs	P. Pōt-erāmūs	Pos-sēmūs
Pōt-estis	Pos-sitis	Pōt-erātis	Pos-sētis
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pōt-erant	Pos-sent

E

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
3. <i>Future-Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>	
S. Pöt-ëro	(wanting.)	S. Pöt-uëram	Pöt-uissëm
Pöt-ëris		Pöt-uëräs	Pöt-uissës
Pöt-ërit		Pöt-uërät	Pöt-uissët
P. Pöt-ërimūs		P. Pöt-uërämūs	Pöt-uissëmūs
Pöt-ëritīs		Pöt-uërätīs	Pöt-uissëtīs
Pöt-ërunť		Pöt-uërant	Pöt-uissent
4. <i>Present-Perfect.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. Pöt-uf	Pöt-uërim	S. Pöt-uëro	(wanting.)
Pöt-uistī	Pöt-uërīs	Pöt-uërīs	
Pöt-uīt	Pöt-uërīt	Pöt-uërīt	
P. Pöt-uīmūs	Pöt-uërimūs	P. Pöt-uërimūs	
Pöt-uistīs	Pöt-uërītīs	Pöt-uërītīs	
Pöt-uërunť	Pöt-uërint	Pöt-uërint	

## INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect*—Pötsë.    *Perfect*—Pötuisë.    *Future*—wanting.

## VOCABULARY 42.

infringo, frëgi, frac-	} <i>I break, im-</i>	aequus, a, um,	<i>level, even, just.</i>
tum, 3,		cur, adv.	<i>why.</i>
obsëuro, etc., 1,	} <i>I darken, ob-</i>	impëtus, us, m.	<i>onset, attack.</i>
		invidïa, ae, f.	<i>envy, ill-will.</i>
relinquo, liqui, }	} <i>I leave, quit.</i>	splendor, òris, m.	<i>brightness, bril-</i>
lietum, 3, }			<i>liancy.</i>
		týrannus, i, m.	<i>despot, tyrant.</i>

## EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere. 2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the sol-



diers were able to defend the city. 6. We can not all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to quit life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

II. Vōlo, vōluī, vellē: *to be willing, to wish.*

III. Nōlo, nōluī, nolle: *to be unwilling, not to wish.*

IV. Mālo, māluī, mallē: *to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather.*

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

S. Vōlo	Nōlo	Mālo
Vīs	Nōn vīs	Māvis
Vult	Nōn vult	Māvult
P. Vōlūmūs	Nōlūmūs	Mālūmūs
Vultis	Nōn vultis	Māvultis
Vōlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S. Vōl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
Vōl-ēbās	Nōl-ēbās	Māl-ēbās
Vōl-ēbāt	Nōl-ēbāt	Māl-ēbāt
P. Vōl-ēbāmūs	Nōl-ēbāmūs	Māl-ēbāmūs
Vōl-ēbātis	Nōl-ēbātis	Māl-ēbātis
Vōl-ēbant	Nōl-ēbant	Māl-ēbant

3. *Future-Imperfect.*

S. Vōl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
Vōl-ēs	Nōl-ēs	Māl-ēs
Vōl-ēt	Nōl-ēt	Māl-ēt
P. Vōl-ēmūs	Nōl-ēmūs	Māl-ēmūs
Vōl-ētis	Nōl-ētis	Māl-ētis
Vōl-ent	Nōl-ent	Māl-ent

4. *Present-Perfect.*

S. Vōl-uī	Nōl-uī	Māl-uī
Vōl-uistī	Nōl-uistī	Māl-uistī
Vōl-uīt	Nōl-uīt	Māl-uīt
P. Vōl-uīmūs	Nōl-uīmūs	Māl-uīmūs
Vōl-uistis	Nōl-uistis	Māl-uistis
Vōl-uērunt or -uērē	Nōl-uērunt or -uērē	Māl-uērunt or -uērē

5. *Past-Perfect.*

<i>S.</i> Völ-uëram	Nöl-uëram	Mäl-uëram
Völ-uëräš	Nöl-uëräš	Mäl-uëräš
Völ-uërät	Nöl-uërät	Mäl-uërät
<i>P.</i> Völ-uëramūs	Nöl-uëramūs	Mäl-uëramūs
Völ-uërätis	Nöl-uërätis	Mäl-uërätis
Völ-uërant	Nöl-uërant	Mäl-uërant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

<i>S.</i> Völ-uëro	Nöl-uëro	Mäl-uëro
Völ-uëris	Nöl-uëris	Mäl-uëris
Völ-uërit	Nöl-uërit	Mäl-uërit
<i>P.</i> Völ-uërimūs	Nöl-uërimūs	Mäl-uërimūs
Völ-uëritis	Nöl-uëritis	Mäl-uëritis
Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i> Völ-im	Nöl-im	Mäl-im
Völ-is	Nöl-is	Mäl-is
Völ-īt	Nöl-īt	Mäl-īt
<i>P.</i> Völ-īmūs	Nöl-īmūs	Mäl-īmūs
Völ-ītis	Nöl-ītis	Mäl-ītis
Völ-int	Nöl-int	Mäl-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i> Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
Vel-lēt	Nol-lēt	Mal-lēt
<i>P.</i> Vel-lēmūs	Nol-lēmūs	Mal-lēmūs
Vel-lētis	Nol-lētis	Mal-lētis
Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Present-Perfect.*

<i>S.</i> Völ-uërim	Nöl-uërim	Mäl-uërim
Völ-uëris	Nöl-uëris	Mäl-uëris
Völ-uërit	Nöl-uërit	Mäl-uërit
<i>P.</i> Völ-uërimūs	Nöl-uërimūs	Mäl-uërimūs
Völ-uëritis	Nöl-uëritis	Mäl-uëritis
Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

<i>S.</i> Völ-nisseem	Nöl-nisseem	Mäl-nisseem
Völ-nissēs	Nöl-nissēs	Mäl-nissēs
Völ-nisēēt	Nöl-nisēēt	Mäl-nisēēt
<i>P.</i> Völ-nissēmūs	Nöl-nissēmūs	Mäl-nissēmūs
Völ-nissētis	Nöl-nissētis	Mäl-nissētis
Völ-nissent	Nöl-nissent	Mäl-nissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.*

(wanting.)

Nōl-i  
Nōl-itē

(wanting.)

*Future.*

S. Nōl-ito  
Nōl-ito  
P. Nōl-itētē  
Nōl-unto

INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect.*

Vel-lē

Nol-lē

Mal-lē

*Perfect.*

Vōl-uissē

Nōl-uissē

Māl-uissē

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Vōl-ens

Nōl-ens

(wanting.)

VOCABULARY 43.

cōmītor, etc., 1,	<i>I accompany.</i>	vīdeor, vīsus, 2,	<i>I seem, appear.</i>
immōlo, etc., 1,	<i>I sacrifice.</i>	Apollo, īnis, m.	<i>Apollo, name of a divinity.</i>
indulgeo, nisi, ul- tum, 2 (with dat.), }	<i>I indulge.</i>	hostia, ae, f.	<i>a victim.</i>
lūdo, si, sum, 3,	<i>I play.</i>	nōbīlis, e,	<i>noble, distin-</i>
mētuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	<i>I fear.</i>		<i>guished.</i>
ōro, etc., 1,	<i>I entreat.</i>	Pŷthāgōras, ae, m.	<i>Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.</i>
salto, etc., 1,	<i>I dance.</i>		
sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2, I sit.			

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavuit quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but

my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*Pres.*) fight (*Inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligere quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Idem velle et idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.

1. I had-rather be good than seem (so). 2. Do not\* deceive; do not lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas would-not lie. 4. You wish the same things as (*Relative Pron.*) I (wish). 5. We had-rather be useful to our country than be rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger; he preferred to restrain it. 10. Do not\* follow bad examples, my son!

V. Fēro, tūlī, ferrē, lātum: to bear, carry, endure.

# I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present-Imperfect.		2. Past-Imperfect.	
S. Fēr-o	Fēr-am	S. Fēr-ēbam	Fer-rem
Fer-s	Fēr-ās	Fēr-ēbās	Fer-rēs
Fer-t	Fēr-āt	Fēr-ēbāt	Fer-rēt
P. Fēr-imūs	Fēr-āmūs	P. Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fer-rēmūs
Fer-tis	Fēr-ātis	Fēr-ēbātis	Fer-rētis
Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant	Fēr-ēbant	Fer-rent

\* Use the Imperative of *nolle*. Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3. *Future-Imperfect.*

S. Fēr-am	Lātūrūs aim
Fēr-ēs	Lātūrūs ais
Fēr-ēt	Lātūrūs ait
P. Fēr-ēmūs	Lātūrī aimūs
Fēr-ētīs	Lātūrī aitīs
Fēr-ent	Lātūrī sint

4. *Present-Perfect.*

S. Tūl-ī	Tūl-ērim
Tūl-istī	Tūl-ēris
Tūl-it	Tūl-ērit
P. Tūl-imūs	Tūl-ērimūs
Tūl-istīs	Tūl-ēritīs
Tūl-erunt or ērē	Tūl-ērint

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S. Tūl-ēram	Tūl-isseim
Tūl-ērās	Tūl-issēs
Tūl-ērāt	Tūl-issēt
P. Tūl-ērāmūs	Tūl-issēmūs
Tūl-ērātīs	Tūl-issētīs
Tūl-erant	Tūl-issent

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S. Tūl-ēro	(wanting.)
Tūl-ēris	
Tūl-ērit	
P. Tūl-ērimūs	
Tūl-ēritīs	
Tūl-ērint	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Fēr
	Fēr-tē
<i>Future.</i>	Fer-to
	Fer-tōtē
	Fēr-unto

INFINITIVE.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fēr-rē
<i>Perfect.</i>	Tūl-issē
<i>Future.</i>	Lātūrum essē

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fēr-ens
<i>Future.</i>	Lātūrūs (a, um)

SUPINES.

Lātum
Lātū

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> Fēr-endī
etc.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

S. Fēr-ōr	Fēr-ār
Fer-rīs	Fēr-āris
Fer-tūr	Fēr-ātūr
P. Fēr-imūr	Fēr-āmūr
Fēr-imīnī	Fēr-āminī
Fēr-untūr	Fēr-antūr

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S. Fēr-ēbār	Fer-rēr
Fēr-ēbāris	Fer-rēris
Fēr-ēbātūr	Fer-rētūr
P. Fēr-ēbāmūr	Fer-rēmūr
Fēr-ēbāminī	Fer-rēminī
Fēr-ēbantūr	Fer-rentūr

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3. *Future-Imperfect.*

S. Fēr-ār	(wanting.)
Fēr-āris	
Fēr-ātūr	
P. Fēr-āmūr	
Fēr-āminī	
Fēr-entūr	

4. *Present-Perfect.*

S. Lātūs sum	Lātūs aim
Lātūs es	Lātūs ais
Lātūs est	Lātūs ait
P. Lātī sumus	Lātī aimūs
Lātī estis	Lātī aitīs
Lātī eunt	Lātī sint

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
5. Past-Perfect.				6. Future-Perfect.		(wanting.)	
S. Lātūs ēram	Lātūs ērās	Lātūs ērāt	P. Lāti ērāmūs	S. Lātūs ēro	Lātūs ēris	Lātūs ērit	P. Lāti ērimūs
Lātūs ērātis	Lāti ēssētis	Lāti ērant		Lātūs ēritus	Lāti ērunt		
IMPERATIVE.				INFINITIVE.			
Present.	Fer-rō	Fēr-īminī		Imperfect.	Fer-ri	Perfect.	Lātum essē
				Future.	Lātum iri		
Future.	Fer-tōr	Fer-tōr	Fēr-untōr	PARTICIPLES.			
				Perfect.	Lātūs (a, um)	Gerundive.	Fēr-endus (a, um)

to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (secum). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

VI. *Ēo, īvī, īrē, ītum: to go.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present-Imperfect.</i>		4. <i>Present-Perfect.</i>	
S. <i>Ē-o</i>	<i>Ē-am</i>	S. <i>Ī-vī or Ī-i</i>	<i>Ī-vērim or Ī-ārim</i>
<i>Ī-s</i>	<i>Ē-ās</i>	<i>Ī-vistī etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīs etc.</i>
<i>Ī-t</i>	<i>Ē-āt</i>	<i>Ī-vīt etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīt etc.</i>
P. <i>Ī-mūs</i>	<i>Ē-āmūs</i>	P. <i>Ī-vīmūs etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vērimūs etc.</i>
<i>Ī-tis</i>	<i>Ē-ātīs</i>	<i>Ī-vistīs etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vērītīs etc.</i>
<i>Ē-unt</i>	<i>Ē-ant</i>	<i>Ī-vērunt etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vērint etc.</i>
		<i>or Ī-vērē</i>	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>	
S. <i>Ī-bam</i>	<i>Ī-rem</i>	S. <i>Ī-vēram or Ī-āram</i>	<i>Ī-vissem, Ī-issem or Ī-ssēm</i>
<i>Ī-bās</i>	<i>Ī-rēs</i>	<i>Ī-vērās etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēs etc.</i>
<i>Ī-bāt</i>	<i>Ī-rēt</i>	<i>Ī-vērāt etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēt etc.</i>
P. <i>Ī-bāmūs</i>	<i>Ī-rēmūs</i>	P. <i>Ī-vērāmūs etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēmūs etc.</i>
<i>Ī-bātīs</i>	<i>Ī-rētīs</i>	<i>Ī-vērātīs etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vissētīs etc.</i>
<i>Ī-bant</i>	<i>Ī-rent</i>	<i>Ī-vērant etc.</i>	<i>Ī-vissent etc.</i>
3. <i>Future-Imperfect.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. <i>Ī-bo</i>	<i>Ī-tūrūs sim</i>	S. <i>Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro</i>	(wanting.)
<i>Ī-bīs</i>	<i>Ī-tūrūs sis</i>	<i>Ī-vērīs etc.</i>	
<i>Ī-bīt</i>	<i>Ī-tūrūs sit</i>	<i>Ī-vērīt etc.</i>	
P. <i>Ī-bīmūs</i>	<i>Ī-tūrī simūs</i>	P. <i>Ī-vērimūs etc.</i>	
<i>Ī-bītīs</i>	<i>Ī-tūrī sitīs</i>	<i>Ī-vērītīs etc.</i>	
<i>Ī-bunt</i>	<i>Ī-tūrī sint</i>	<i>Ī-vērint etc.</i>	
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	<i>Ī</i>	Imperfect.	<i>Ī-rē</i>
	<i>Ī-tē</i>	Perfect.	<i>Ī-vissē, Ī-issē or Ī-ssē</i>
Future.	<i>Ī-to</i>	Future.	<i>Ī-tūrū essē</i>
	<i>Ī-to</i>		
	<i>Ī-tētē</i>	PARTICIPLES.	
	<i>Ē-unto</i>	Imperfect.	<i>Ī-ens (Gen. Ē-untīs)</i>
		Future.	<i>Ī-tūrūs, (ā, um)</i>

	GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen.	<b>Ē-undi, etc.</b>	<b>Ī-tum</b>

The Compounds of *ĕo* are conjugated in the same way.  
The following are the principal :

<i>āb-ĕo,</i>	<i>āb-ĭi,</i>	<i>āb ĭtum,</i>	<i>to go away.</i>
<i>ād-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to go to.</i>
<i>cū-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to join together.</i>
<i>ex-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to go out.</i>
<i>in-ĕo, intro-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to go into, enter.</i>
<i>intĕr-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>ŭb-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to meet ; esp. to meet death ; to die.</i>
<i>pĕr-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>prae-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to go before.</i>
<i>praetĕr-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to pass by.</i>
<i>rĕd-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to return.</i>
<i>sūb-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to go up to.</i>
<i>trans-ĕo,</i>		etc.	<i>to cross over.</i>

N.B.—In the Compounds the form *ĭi* is used in preference to *ivi*.

#### VOCABULARY 45.

<i>occido, ĭdi, ĭsum, 3, I kill, slay.</i>	<i>hĭlāris, e,</i>	<i>cheerful.</i>
<i>stātuo, ui, ūtum, 3, I fix, determine.</i>	<i>ŏrāculum, i, n.</i>	<i>oracle.</i>
<i>atrox, ōcis,</i>	<i>silentium, ii, n.</i>	<i>silence.</i>
	<i>suprĕmus, a, um,</i>	<i>highest, last.</i>
<i>fācĭlĕ, adv.</i>	<i>unquam, adv.</i>	<i>at any time, ever.</i>
<i>fāmes, is, f.</i>		

#### EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam silentio transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) pass their life in silence. 2. Let us go-out from the camp ; let us return into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (pedibus). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that desperate battle. 6. We ought all to be able



to meet our last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*Abl.*) and cold (*Abl.*). 8. Let us go to the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross.

VII. *Fio, factus sum, fieri*: to become or be made, to happen.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present-Imperfect.*

S. <i>Fi-o</i>	<i>Fi-am</i>
<i>Fi-s</i>	<i>Fi-ās</i>
<i>Fi-t</i>	<i>Fi-āt</i>
P. [ <i>Fi-mūs</i> ]	<i>Fi-āmūs</i>
[ <i>Fi-tis</i> ]	<i>Fi-ātis</i>
<i>Fi-unt</i>	<i>Fi-ant</i>

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S. <i>Fi-ebam</i>	<i>Fi-ērem</i>
<i>Fi-ebās</i>	<i>Fi-ērās</i>
<i>Fi-ebāt</i>	<i>Fi-ērēt</i>
P. <i>Fi-ebāmūs</i>	<i>Fi-ērēmūs</i>
<i>Fi-ebātis</i>	<i>Fi-ērētis</i>
<i>Fi-ebant</i>	<i>Fi-ērent</i>

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3. *Future-Imperfect.*

S. <i>Fi-am</i>	(wanting.)
<i>Fi-ās</i>	
<i>Fi-āt</i>	
P. <i>Fi-ēmūs</i>	
<i>Fi-ētis</i>	
<i>Fi-ent</i>	

4. *Present-Perfect.*

*Factus sum*, etc. *Factus sim*, etc.

5. *Past-Perfect.*

*Factus eram*, etc. *Factus essem*, etc.

6. *Future-Perfect.*

*Factus ero*, etc. (wanting.)

IMPERATIVE.

*Present. Fi, Fi-tō*

PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect. Factus (a, um)*  
*Gerundive. Faciendus (a, um)*

INFINITIVE.

*Imperfect. Fi-erī*

*Perfect. Factum esse*

*Future. Factum iri*

*Fio* is used as the Passive of *facio*.

VOCABULARY 46.

*adjūvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1, I assist.*  
*nequeo, quīvi and*  
*quī itum, 4 (ir-*  
*reg., like eo),*  
*cāsus, us, m.*  
*consilium, ii, n.*  
*I am unable,*  
*can not.*  
*chance, ac-*  
*cident.*  
*advice, coun-*  
*sel, plan.*

*infectus, a, um,*  
*grāvis, e,*  
*noxius, a, um,*  
*socius, ii, m.*  
*undone.*  
*heavy, severe.*  
*guilty.*  
*partner, ally,*  
*companion.*  
*Thēmistocles, is, m. Thēmistocles, a*  
*fanous Athe-*  
*nian.*

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. *Nemo fit casu bonus.* 2. *Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest.* 3. *Senectute prudentior fis.* 4. *Nemo*

ignavia immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus, quod bene fertur, leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri nequit. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*Sup.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest sorrows become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done can not be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (=of) his fault.

### VIII. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

Besides *Fio* several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect Tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:

<b>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</b>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<b>Fido, fesus sum, fidēre</b> (with <i>Dat.</i> or <i>Abl.</i> ),	<i>to trust.</i>
<b>Gaudeo, gāvissus sum, gaudēre</b> (with <i>Abl.</i> ),	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<b>Sōleo, solūtus sum, solēre,</b>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

So, too, *coeno*, *to sup* or *dine*, often takes *coenātus sum*, and *jūro*, *to swear*, *jurātus sum*, instead of *coenāvi*, *jurāvi*. Such Verbs are called Neuter-Passives.

### VOCABULARY 47.

<b>addisco, didici</b> (no <i>sup.</i> ), 3,	<i>I learn in ad-</i>	<b>nāvālis, e,</b>	<i>naval.</i>
<b>bibo, bibi, bibitum</b> , 3,	<i>diction.</i>	<b>Nilus, i, m.</b>	<i>the Nile, the riv-</i>
<b>conservo, etc.</b> , 1,	<i>I preserve.</i>		<i>er of Egypt.</i>
<b>curro, cucurri, cur-</b>	<i>I run.</i>	<b>nonnullus, a, um,</b>	<i>some.</i>
<b>sum</b> , 3,		<b>quōtidīē, adv.</b>	<i>every day, daily.</i>
<b>interficio, feci, fec-</b>	<i>I put to death,</i>	<b>tam, adv.</b>	<i>so, to such a de-</i>
<b>tum</b> , 3,	<i>kill.</i>		<i>gree.</i>
<b>āliquis, qua, quid,</b>	<i>someone, some-</i>	<b>PHRASE:</b>	
<b>pron.</b>	<i>thing.</i>	<b>In legem jurare,</b>	
<b>Carthāginiensis, e,</b>	<i>Carthaginian.</i>	<i>to swear to a law.</i>	

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Carthaginienses navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fisus est rebus suis. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium reppererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted in himself (*Dative*). 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*Fut.-Perf.*) we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end. 10. The whole city rejoiced that (quod) the conspiracy had been discovered.

XXXI.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are such as can not have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES.

<i>Dēcēt, dēcūit, dēcārē,</i>	<i>it is seemly.</i>
<i>Dēdēcēt, dēdēcūit, dēdēcārē,</i>	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
<i>Lībēt, lībūit and lībītum est, lībērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Licēt, licūit and licītum est, licērē,</i>	<i>it is lawful, it is allowed.</i>
<i>Liquēt, liquērē,</i>	<i>it is clear.</i>
<i>Miserēt or miserētūr, miserītum est, miserērē,</i>	<i>it excites pity.</i>
<i>Opertēt, oportūit, oportērē,</i>	<i>it behooves.</i>
<i>Pigēt, pigūit and pigītum est, pigērē,</i>	<i>it vexes.</i>
<i>Placēt, placūit or placītum est, placērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Poenitēt, poenitūit, poenitērē,</i>	<i>it causes sorrow, repents</i>
<i>Pūdēt, pudūit or pudītum est, pudērē,</i>	<i>it shames.</i>
<i>Taedēt, (pertaesum est), taedērē,</i>	<i>it disgusts, wearies.</i>

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses :

Pūdēt mē,	it shames me, or I am ashamed.
Pūdēt tē,	it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.
Pūdēt eum,	it shames him, or he is ashamed.
Pūdēt nōs,	it shames us, or we are ashamed.
Pūdēt vōs,	it shames you, or you are ashamed.
Pūdēt eōs,	it shames them, or they are ashamed.

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except libet, licet, liquet, and placet, which govern the Dative; as, mīhi libet, *it pleases me*; mīhi licet, *it is lawful for me, I am at liberty*, etc.

## II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandināt, 1,	it hails.
Ningit, nixit, ningērē,	it snows.
Pluit, pluit or pluvit, pluērē,	it rains.
Tōnāt, tōnuīt, tōnārē,	it thunders.
Lūescit, (illuxit), lūescērē,	it becomes light.
Vespērascit, vespērāvīt, vespērascēre,	evening approaches.

## VOCABULARY 48.

deploro, etc., 1,	I lament over, deplore.	Ariovistus, 1, m.	Ariovistus, a German king.
irascor, irātus, } 3, dep.	I am angry.	fortē, adv.	by chance.
mitto, misi, mis- } sum, 3,	I send.	infāmia, ae, f.	infamy.
tāceo, ui, itum, 2,	I am silent.	minimē, adv.	in the least degree, by no means.
tribuo, ui, utum, 3,	I give, assign.	nēc, nēquē, conj.	neither, nor.
		stultitia, ae, f.	folly.

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet poenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*Acc.*) repents not of his crime (*scelus*). 2. What does it behoove us to do? 3. It behooved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to de-

ceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*Gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*Inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

## XXXII.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

- |                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| I. <b>Coepti,</b>  | <i>I begin or began.</i> |
| II. <b>Mēmini,</b> | <i>I remember.</i>       |
| III. <b>Ōdi,</b>   | <i>I hate.</i>           |

These three are called *Preteritive Verbs*, as being used generally in only the Preterit or Perfect Tenses.

INDICATIVE.— <i>Pres.-Perf.</i>	<b>Coepti</b>	<b>Mēmini</b>	<b>Ōdi</b>
<i>Past-Perf.</i>	<b>Coeptēram</b>	<b>Mēminēram</b>	<b>Odēram</b>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<b>Coeptēro</b>	<b>Mēminēro</b>	<b>Odēro</b>
SUBJUNCTIVE.— <i>Pres.-Perf.</i>	<b>Coeptērim</b>	<b>Mēminērim</b>	<b>Odērim</b>
<i>Past-Perf.</i>	<b>Coeptissem</b>	<b>Mēminissem</b>	<b>Odissem</b>
IMPERATIVE.— <i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	<b>S. Memento</b>	(wanting.)
		<b>P. Mementōte</b>	
INFINITIVE.— <i>Perfect.</i>	<b>Coeptisse</b>	<b>Mēminisse</b>	<b>Odisse</b>
PARTICIPLE.— <i>Future.</i>	<b>Coeptūrus</b>	(wanting.)	<b>Ōsūrus</b>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>Coeptus</b>	(wanting.)	<b>Ōsus</b>

IV. **Aio, I say.**

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present-Imperfect.</i>		<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	
<b>S. Aio</b>	—	<b>S. Aiōbam</b>	(wanting.)
<b>Ais</b>	<b>Aiās</b>	<b>Aiōbās</b>	
<b>Ait</b>	<b>Aiāt</b>	<b>Aiōbāt</b>	
<b>P. —</b>	—	<b>P. Aiōbāmus</b>	
—	—	<b>Aiōbātis</b>	
<b>Aiant</b>	<b>Aiant</b>	<b>Aiōbant</b>	

PARTICIPLE.—*Imperfect.* **Aiens.**

## V. Inquam, say I.

INDICATIVE.		INDICATIVE.	
<i>Pres.-Imperf.</i>	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Fut.-Imperf.</i>	<i>Pres.-Perfect.</i>
S. Inquam	_____	S. _____	_____
Inquis	_____	Inquiēs	Inquisti
Inquit	Inquiēbāt	Inquiēt	Inquit
P. Inquimus	_____	IMPERATIVE.	
Inquitis	_____	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Inquiunt	Inquiēbant	S. Inquē	2d Sing. Inquito

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I*, *says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

## VI. Fāri, to speak (a Deponent).

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present-Imperfect.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
S. Fātur	(wanting.)	S. Fārē	Fāri
<i>Future-Imperfect.</i>		PARTICIPLES.	
S. Fābor	(wanting.)	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fantis, etc. (without a Nom.)
Fābitur		<i>Perfect.</i>	Fātus (ā, um)
<i>Present-Perfect.</i>		<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fandus (ā, um)
Fātus sum, etc.	Fātus sim, etc.	SUPINE.	Fātu
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>		GERUND.	Fandi, do, etc.
Fātus eram, etc.	Fātus essem, etc.		

## XXXIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.
2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.
3. Indeclinable Substantives, as fās, *permitted by heaven*, nēfās, *not permitted by heaven*, nīhl, *nothing*, are *Neuter*.
4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as conjux, *husband or wife*, are *Common*.

## SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. FIRST DECLENSION.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine; unless they designate males, as, *nauta, a sailor*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.—Substantives in *us* and *er* are Masculine; those in *um* are Neuter.

A few Substantives in *us* are Feminine; as, *alvus, the belly*; *cölus, a distaff*; *hūmus, the ground*; *vannus, a winnowing fan*; *arctus, the constellation Bear*; *carbāsus, fine flax*.

A few Substantives in *us* are Neuter; as, *vīrus, poison*; *pēlāgus, the sea*; *vulgus, the common people*.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:

1. *Masculine*.—(a) Substantives in *or* derived from verbs; as, *ām-or, love*, from *āmo, I love*.

(b) Substantives in *tor* derived from verbs; as, *āmā-tor, a lover*, from *āmo, I love*; *vic-tor, a conqueror*, from *vinco, I conquer*.

2. *Feminine*.—(a) Substantives in *io* and *tio* derived from verbs; as, *audī-tio, hearing*, from *audio, I hear*.

(b) Substantives in *tūs* derived from Substantives; as, *vir-tus, manliness*, from *vir, a man*.

(c) Substantives in *tās* derived from Substantives and Adjectives; as, *cīvī-tas, citizenship*, from *cīvis, a citizen*; *crūdēlī-tas, cruelty*, from *crūdēlis, cruel*.

(d) Substantives in *tūdo* derived from Adjectives; as, *longī-tūdo, length*, from *longus, long*.

(e) Substantives in *trix* derived from Substantives in *tor*; as, *vic-trix, a female conqueror*, from *vic-tor*.

3. *Neuter*.—(a) Substantives in *e*; as, *mārē, the sea*.

(b) Substantives in *mēn* derived from Verbs; as, *flū-men, a river*, from *flu-ere, to flow*.

(c) Substantives in *ūs* and *ūr*; as, *ōpus, a work*; *fulgur, lightning*.

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.—Substantives in *ūs* are Masculine: those in *u* are Neuter.

A few Substantives in *us* are Feminine: viz., *trībus*, a tribe (a division of the Roman people); *ācus*, a needle; *porticus*, a portico; *dōmus*, a house; *nūrus*, a daughter-in-law; *ānus*, an old woman; *socrus*, a mother-in-law; *īdūs* (pl.), the Ides (a division of the Roman month); *mānūs*, a hand.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except *dies* (*mēridies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

### *Additional Rules of Quantity.*

1. A vowel resulting from contraction is long; as, *cōgo*, from *cōāgo*.

2. Derivatives follow the quantity of the words from which they are derived; as, *nāvālis*, from *nāvis*, etc.

3. Words adopted from the Greek generally retain the quantity of the original; as, *Pallās*, *ādīs*, from *Παλλὰς*, *ἄδος*.

REMARK.—Sometimes they fall under the ordinary Latin rules, as *rhētor*, from *ῥήτωρ*, where the final vowel is short before *r* final.

4. Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words of which they are compounded; as, *dēmitto*, from *dē*; *quīlibet* or *quīvis*, from *quī*, etc.

5. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have that vowel long, as *ā*, *dā*, *mē*, *prō*, *tū*, etc., except enclitics; as, *quē*, *nē* (interrog.), etc.

6. Final *a* in words that are not declined is long, as *frustrā*, etc., except *itā* and *quīā* (also *eīā* and *putā*, which do not frequently occur).

7. Final *e* in words of more than one syllable is usually short; as, *temporē*, *credītē*, *tristē*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—In the cases of the First and Fifth Declensions (as *Phœbē*, *diē*), in the Second Singular of Imperative of the Second Conjugation (as *monē*, *salvē*), in Adverbs in *e* from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (as *justē*, *pulchrē*), and in *fermē*, *ferē*, *olē*, the final *e* is long.



## PART II.

### SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given :

	Page		Page		Page
RULE 1.....	3	RULE 7.....	14	RULE 13.....	60
“ 2.....	4	“ 8.....	25	“ 14.....	61
“ 3.....	4	“ 9.....	31	“ 15.....	77
“ 4.....	4	“ 10.....	45	“ 16.....	89
“ 5.....	7	“ 11.....	57	“ 17.....	90
“ 6.....	10	“ 12.....	59		

#### XXXIV.—THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative; as, *vilius argentum est auro*, *silver is more common than gold.*

#### VOCABULARY 49.

<b>cunctus, a, um,</b> <b>dissimilis, e,</b> <b>ferox, ōis,</b> <b>ignoratio, onis, f.</b> <b>inferiōr, ūs (comp.),</b> <b>mālum, i, n.</b> <b>perfectus, a, um,</b> <b>praestābilis, e,</b>	<i>all, all together.</i> <i>unlike.</i> <i>fierce, spirited.</i> <i>ignorance.</i> <i>lower, inferior.</i> <i>an evil.</i> <i>finished, perfect.</i> <i>excellent.</i>	<b>Phidias, ae, m.</b> <i>Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.</i> <b>proximus, a, um,</b> <i>nearest, next.</i> <b>scientia, ae, f.</b> <i>knowledge.</i> <b>sēd, conj.</b> <i>but.</i> <b>similis, e,</b> <i>like.</i> <b>simulācrum, i, n.</b> <i>image, statue.</i> <b>vīlis, e,</b> <i>cheap, common.</i>
---	--	--

#### EXERCISE XLIX.

1. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* 2. *Deus major et potentior est cunctis.* 3. *Nihil est majus amicitia, nihil jucundius.* 4. *Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit.* 5. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior scientia esse*

videtur. 6. Elephanto belluarum nulla prudentior est. 7. Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. 8. Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute. 9. Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius. 10. Sol major et splendidior est lunā.

1. What is brighter than the sun? what more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens. 8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretense of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

### XXXV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**RULE 19.**—When a secondary clause contains a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the Verb in the secondary clause is in Latin frequently changed into a Participle, and agrees with its subject in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the **ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**; as, *sōlū ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt, when the sun had risen, the Romans saw the enemy.*

The Latin language possesses no Perfect Participle Active except in the case of Deponent Verbs; hence in English the Perfect Participle Active, which agrees with the subject of the Verb, is in Latin put in the Ablative Case together with its own object; as, *Caesar, expōsitō exercitū, ad hostēs contendit, Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*

#### VOCABULARY 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nītum, 3, <i>I learn,</i>	conficio, feci, } <i>I finish, accom-</i> ascertain.	fectum, 3, } <i>plish.</i>
comprēhendo, di, sum, 3, <i>I seize.</i>		
		convoco, etc., 1, <i>I call together.</i>

conscendo, di, } sum, 3, }	<i>I mount, go on board (ship).</i>	solvo, lvi, lūtum, } 3, }	<i>I loosen, melt.</i>
contendo, di, sum and tum, 3, }	<i>I strain, hasten.</i>	subsequor, secū- tus, 3, dep. }	<i>I follow up.</i>
effloresco, flōrui, } no sup., 3, }	<i>to blossom forth.</i>	suscipio, cōpi, cep- tum, 3, }	<i>I undertake.</i>
expōno, pōsui, pō- sūtum, 3, }	<i>I put forth, dis- embark (troops).</i>	vexo, etc., 1, } aetas, ātis, f. }	<i>I vex, harass. age, time of life.</i>
intumescō, tūmui, } no sup., 3, }	<i>to swell.</i>	Arbēla, ōrum, n. } and ae, f. }	<i>Arbēla, a town in Assyria.</i>
lābor, lapsus, 3, } dep. }	<i>I glide, pass away, fall.</i>	Cassivellaunus, i, m. }	<i>Cassivellaunus, a British chief.</i>
ōrior, ortus, 4, dep. }	<i>I rise.</i>	dēlectus, us, m. }	<i>a levy.</i>
perlēgo, lēgi, leo- tum, 3, }	<i>I read through.</i>	infirmus, a, um, }	<i>infirm, feeble.</i>
perrumpo, rūpi, } raptum, 3, }	<i>I burst through.</i>	nix, nivis, f. }	<i>snow.</i>
praemitto, misi, } missum, 3, }	<i>I send on be- fore.</i>	Pisistrātus, i, m. }	<i>Pisistrātus, a despot of Ath- ens.</i>
reōto, etc., 1, }	<i>I read aloud.</i>	rēnātus, us, m. }	<i>senate.</i>
recupēro, etc., 1, }	<i>I recover, get back.</i>	stātīm, adv. }	<i>immediately.</i>
regno, etc., 1, }	<i>I reign, am king.</i>		
sentio, sensi, sen- sum, 4, }	<i>I feel, perceive.</i>		

## PHRASES :

Delectum habēre,	<i>to hold a levy.</i>
Maxima itinēra,	<i>forced marches.</i>
Navem (naves) } conscendēre, }	<i>to embark.</i>

## EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperata pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpius superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, inerte vere, bellum susceperat. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere iubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendit. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisistratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—The words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in Italics.

1. When the sun rises (the sun rising), all (things) become brighter. 2. When the moon had risen, the night was made brighter. 3. When Cato was slain, the commonwealth perished. 4. When these things were done, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompeius. 6. Having heard these things, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. Whilst Servius Tullius was

king (*Serv. Tull. being-king*), the city was fortified with a wall of-stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy. 9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge)*, he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. *Bello Punico confecto*, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. *Dario apud Arbela victo*, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. *His literis perlectis*, consul comprehendi eos jubet. 4. *Conjurazione detecta*, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. *Senatu convocato*, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjurazione acceperat. 6. *His rebus paratis*, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. *Delectu habito*, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. *Catone mortuo nulla jam erat respublica*. 9. *Caesare occiso*, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. *Proelio commisso*, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. *Caesar, having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. *Our men, having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. *Cassivellaunus, having heard of this disaster*, sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire as far as the Indus*, Alexander returned toward the west. 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be safe to enjoy peace. 8. *(With) you (for) our leader*, we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained (adeptus\*)*, our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

\* N.B.—*Adeptus*, with a few other Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

### XXXVI.—THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.

RULE 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative Case; as, *sex et viginti annos regnavit, he reigned twenty-six years*; *agg-*

rem lātum pēdēs trēcentōs, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā extruxērunt, *they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

## VOCABULARY 51.

extruo, uxi, uctum, 3, <i>I heap up.</i>	nātus, a, um, part. and adj. } <i>born, aged.</i>	
pōno, pōui, pōsitum, 3, <i>I place.</i>	passus, us, m. } <i>a pace (about five feet).</i>	
obsideo, sēdi, sessum, 2, } <i>I blockade, lay siege to.</i>	Plāto, ōnis, m. } <i>Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.</i>	
Āthēnās, ārum, f. } <i>Athens.</i>	Sāguntini, ōrum, m. } <i>the Suguntines, people of Saguntum, in Spain.</i>	
(only pl.) }		
bestiōla, ae, f. } <i>a small animal, insect.</i>		
campus, i, m. } <i>a plain.</i>		
dōminātus, us, m. } <i>sovereignty, rule.</i>		
hōra, ae, f. } <i>an hour.</i>		
Hanno, ōnis, m. } <i>Hanno, a common Carthaginian name.</i>		
Mārāthon, ōnis, m. } <i>Marathon, a plain near Athens.</i>		
	PHRASES:	
	Castra ponēre, } <i>to pitch a camp.</i>	
	Murum, aggērem } <i>to carry a wall</i>	
	ducēre, } <i>or mound</i>	
		<i>along, i. e., to construct.</i>

## EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quacdam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty-four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were-distant about four thousand paces (*Gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty-one years.

7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behooves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live more than one hundred years.

## XXXVII.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

**RULE 21.**—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative Case without prepositions; as, Consul Rōmam prōfectūs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* towns and small islands are put in the Ablative Case without prepositions; as, Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectūs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

## VOCABULARY 52.

oēdo, sai, ssum, 3, } <i>I yield, retire.</i>	Crēta, ae, f. } <i>Crete (now Can-</i>
confēro, tūli, lā-	
tum, ferre, } <i>I bring together,</i>	
oppōno, pōsui, } <i>betake.</i>	
pōsitum, 3, } <i>I set against, op-</i>	Ibi, adv. (from } <i>there.</i>
pervēnio, vēni, } <i>pose.</i>	is, id), }
ventum, 4, } <i>I arrive at.</i>	Lācōdaemon, }
pēto, tīvi and tīi, } <i>I seek.</i>	ōnis, f. }
tītum, 3, }	
rēverto, verti, } <i>I turn back, re-</i>	Leōnidas, ae, m. } <i>Leonidas, a king</i>
versum, 3, } <i>turn.</i>	of Sparta.
rēvertor, versus, }	Lūcēria, ae, f. } <i>Luceria, a town</i>
dep., 3, }	of Apulia.
Alcibiādes, is, m. } <i>Alcibiades, a cel-</i>	Lūcius, ii, m. (ab- } <i>Lucius, a com-</i>
	brev. L.) } <i>mon Roman fore-</i>
Aeschīnes, is, m. } <i>Aeschines, an or-</i>	mandātum, i, n. } <i>charge, commis-</i>
	sion.
	perpētuum, a, um, } <i>continual.</i>
Cūrius, ii, m. } <i>Curius, a Roman</i>	Rhōdus, i, f. } <i>Rhodes, an isl-</i>
	and of Greece.
Cānūsium, ii, n. } <i>Canusium (now</i>	Sparta, ae, f. } <i>Sparta, a city</i>
	Canosa), a town
	of the Pelopon-
Capua, ae, f. } <i>Cupua, a city of</i>	
	Campania.
exilium, ii, n. } <i>banishment, exile.</i>	

PHRASE :	
Exilium agere,	<i>to live in exile.</i>

## PHRASE:

## EXERCISE LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceria proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, Athenas reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Sparta, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius Rhodum cessit, et se Romam contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbela victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*Ablative Absolute*), returned immediately to Rome. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I will betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out for Capua. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria. 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*Abl. Absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

RULE 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Dative (Locative) Case; as, ut Rōmae consūlēs, sic Carthāgīnī bīnī rēgēs crēābantur, *as at Rome consuls, so at Carthage two kings were appointed.*

NOTE.—In the Second Declension an old Dative Singular in *i* is used in this construction; as, Cōrīnthī multōs annos vix t, *he lived many years at Corinth.* So also, dōmī, *at home*; hūmī, *on the ground.* Also in the Third Declension the Ablative Singular is used as well as the Dative; as, Carthāgīnē or Carthāgīnī, *at Carthage.*

## VOCABULARY 53.

constituo, ui, ūtum, 3, <i>I settle, determine.</i>	Apollōnia, ae, f. <i>Apollonia, a town in Epirus.</i>
consumo, mpsi, } <i>I consume,</i> mptum, 3, } <i>waste away.</i>	Aristides, is, m. <i>Aristides, an Athenian statesman.</i>
expello, pūli, pulsum, 3, } <i>I drive out.</i>	Arpinum, i, n. <i>Arpinum, a town of Latium.</i>
hiemo, etc., 1, <i>I winter.</i>	Bābŷlon, ōnis, f. <i>Babylon, a city of Assyria.</i>
iaceo, cui, 2, <i>I lie.</i>	

## 122 CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

<b>Cannae</b> , ārum, } <i>Cannæ, a village</i> <i>f. pl.</i> } <i>of Apulia.</i>	<b>Lesbus</b> , i, f. <i>Lesbos, an island in</i> <i>the Ægean Sea.</i>
<b>Conon</b> , ōnis, m. <i>Conon, an Athe-</i> <i>nian general.</i>	<b>Mārius</b> , ii, m. <i>Marius, a famous</i> <i>Roman general.</i>
<b>Cūmae</b> , ārum, } <i>Cumæ, a city of</i> <i>f. pl.</i> } <i>Campania.</i>	<b>morbus</b> , i, m. <i>disease, illness.</i>
<b>Cyprus</b> , i, f. <i>Cyprus, an island</i> <i>off Cilicia.</i>	<b>ōrācŭlum</b> , i, n. <i>an oracle.</i>
<b>Delphi</b> , ōrum, } <i>Delphi, a city of</i> <i>m. pl.</i> } <i>Greece.</i>	<b>permulti</b> , æ, a, <i>very many.</i>
<b>Diōnysius</b> , ii, m. <i>Dionysius, name</i> <i>of two tyrants of</i> <i>Syracuse.</i>	<b>quālis</b> , e, <i>of what sort, as.</i>
<b>Dyrrachium</b> , ii, n. <i>Dyrrachium, a</i> <i>town in Epirus.</i>	<b>tālis</b> , e, <i>of that sort, such.</i>
<b>Fabricius</b> , ii, m. <i>Fabricius, a noble</i> <i>Roman.</i>	<b>Timōtheus</b> , i, m. <i>Timotheus, a fa-</i> <i>mous Greek.</i>
<b>Hōrātius</b> , ii, m. <i>Horace, a Roman</i> <i>poet.</i>	<b>Vēnŭsia</b> , æ, f. <i>Venusia (now Ve-</i> <i>nosa), a town in</i> <i>S. Italy.</i>

### PHRASE:

**Morbo censūmi**, *to be carried off*  
*by illness.*

## EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cy-  
pri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae  
vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus  
est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius  
Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis Ro-  
mae Fabricius, qualis Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus  
Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus,  
a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your  
friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having  
been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*Past-Imp.*) boys at  
Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6.  
At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (*committo*) be-  
tween the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell at  
Cumae than at Rome. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and  
lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few  
poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (*et*)  
boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*Past-Imp.*).



# XXXVIII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE MOOD.

RULE 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood are used :

- I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing* ; as, *histōria narrat Rōmam ā Rōmulō conditam essē, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus* ; *sentimus cālērē ignem, nīvem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*
- II. After such expressions as *nōtum est, it is known* ; *justum est, it is just* ; *vērīsimilē est, it is probable* ; *certum est, constat, it is agreed, it is certain, etc.* ; as, *constat Rōmam ā Rōmulō conditam essē, it is certain that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

## VOCABULARY 54.

advēnio, vēni, ven- tum, 4,	} I arrive.	caecus, a, um,	blind.
animadverto, ti, } sum, 3,		Dēlos, i, f.	Delos, an island of Greece.
confūgio, fūgi, fū- gitum, 3,	} I observe.	Dīāna, ae, f.	Diana, a Roman goddess.
constat, stitit, imp. 1,		florens, ntis,	flourishing.
contineo, tinui, } tentum, 2,	} I flee to.	Hōmērus, i, m.	Homer.
nēgo, etc., 1,		imprudentia, ae, f.	ignorance, im- prudence.
pārio, pēpēri, par- tum, 3,	} it is evident, it is agreed, etc.	Lātōna, ae, f.	Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.
prōdo, didi, dītum, 3,		manifestus, a, um,	evident, mani- fest.
pūto, etc., 1,	} I hold together.	nisi, conj.	unless, except.
sentio, sensi, sen- sum, 4,		quondam, adv.	some time, for- merly.
trādo, didi, dītum, 3,	} I deny.	stella, ae, f.	a star.
vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2,		Thāles, ētis, m.	Thales, a fa- mous philoso- pher.
causā (abl.),	} I bring forth.	Trōjānus, a, um,	Trojan, of Troy.
crēdibilis, e,		vērīsimilis, e.	likely, probable.
	} I hand down, I betray.		
	} I think.		
	} I feel, per- ceive.		
	} I hand down, deliver.		
	} I see.		
	} for the sake of. credible.		

## EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam prae-miis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gal-lis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertebat, totum ex-

ercitum propter ducum imprudentiam periturum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides daturos. 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*Imp.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*Past-Imp.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causâ factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est, amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est, Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est, liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat, Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque perisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed among all writers that Romulus was (*Perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you are-making-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*Pres.-Perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*Fut.-Perf.*) in the city.

## XXXIX.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

**RULE 24.**—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles; as, *Quid agis?* *What are you doing?* *Pūtas-nē?* *Do you think?* *Non-nē-pūtās?* *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*. Of these *nē* is always written as an enclitic, like the Conjunction *que*. *Utrum* and *an* are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and *an* always with the second alternative.

*Num* has a negative force, as *Num itā pūtās* = *You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for. *Utrum . . . ān* may be translated by *whether . . . or*; as, *Utrum sōl ān lūnā mājōr est?* *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?* *Nē* does not need to be expressed by any English word; as, *Visnē?* *Do you wish?* *Nonnē pūtās?* *Do you not think?*

## VOCABULARY 55.

consentio, nsi, nsum, 4,	{	<i>I agree.</i>	eloquens, ntis, igneus, a, um,	<i>eloquent. fiery, made of fire.</i>
crēdo, dīdi, dī- tum, 3,			Lucrētius, ii, m.	<i>Lucretius, a Ro- man poet.</i>
dirīpio, rīpui, reptum, 3,	{	<i>I plunder, pillage.</i>	mālēvōlus, a, um,	<i>ill-wishing, ma- levolent.</i>
intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3,			mendax, ācis, primārius, a, um,	<i>lying, a liar. first-rate, emi- nent.</i>
respondeo, ndi, nsum, 2,	{	<i>I answer.</i>	stultus, a, um, sūpērus, a, um.	<i>foolish.</i>
antīquus, a, um, bēnēvōlus, a, um,			Comp. sūpērior, ius; Superl. sū- prēmus and sum- mus, a, um.	{
bōnum, i, n. cārus, a, um, divīnus, a, um,	<i>ancient. well-wishing, be- nevolent. a good, a blessing. dear, precious. of the gods, di- vine.</i>	turpitūdo, inis, f.	<i>disgrace.</i>	

## EXERCISE LV.

**A.**—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus? 3. Nonne sol longo

major est quam luna? 4. Num ita audes dicere? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit? 7. Suntne haec vera bona? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentia?

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No). 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No). 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

B.—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primum fuisse virum? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolō animo facta esse? 4. Utrum Romae an in agris hibernis mensibus manere mavis? 5. Utrum est turpitudine omnium malorum maximum an non? 6. Utrum haec benevolō an malevolō animo fecisti? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis? 9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis? 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behoove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

## XL.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

**RULE 25.**—Indirect Questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence; as, *Rōgābo quid factum sīt, I will ask what has been done*; *Mīrum est quae fūerit causā, It is strange what the reason may have been*; *Vidēbo num rēdīrīt, I will see whether he has returned*. The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

**RULE 26.**—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the Verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the Verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the Verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Future Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the Verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the Verb in the dependent clause is put in the Past Tense Subjunctive.

*Present and Future Time.*

PRESENT IMPERF.	{	Scio quid agās,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
		Scio quid egēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
		Scio quid actūrus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT.	{	Cognōvī quid agās,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
		Cognōvī quid egēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done.</i>
		Cognōvī quid actūrus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>
FUTURE IMPERF.	{	Audiam quid agās,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
		Audiam quid egēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
		Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

*Past Time.*

PAST IMPERF.	{	Sciēbam quid agērēs,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
		Sciēbam quid egissēs,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
		Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAST INDEFIN.	{	Cognōvī quid agērēs,	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
		Cognōvī quid egissēs,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
		Cognōvī quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>

PAST FUTURE.	Cognōvĕram quid āgĕrēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvĕram quid ēgissēs,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvĕram quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises XXV., XXVI., XXVII., XXVIII. (the Subjunctive Mood.)

N.B.—In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by *num*, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by *utrum* or *-ne*.

## VOCABULARY 56.

abjicio, jeci, jec- tum, 3, }	<i>I cast away.</i>	incertus, a, um,	<i>uncertain.</i>
antepōno, pōsi, pō- situm, 3, }	<i>I prefer.</i>	infāmis, e,	<i>infamous.</i>
conjicio, jeci, jec- tum, 3, }	<i>I fling (togeth- er).</i>	injustus, a, um,	<i>unjust.</i>
evenio, veni, ven- tum, 4, }	<i>to happen.</i>	Læca, æ, m.	<i>Læca, a Roman family name.</i>
nūmĕro, etc., 1,	<i>I count.</i>	mortuus, a, um,	<i>dead.</i>
quaero, quaerĭvi, } quaesitum, 3, }	<i>I seek, inquire.</i>	nōvus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
rōgo, etc., 1,	<i>I ask.</i>	philōsōphus, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
specŭlor, etc., dep. 1, <i>I spy out.</i>		plānē, adv.	<i>altogether.</i>
viso, visi, visum, 3, <i>I go to see, visit.</i>		quaestio, ōnis, f.	<i>question.</i>
Blaesus, i, m.	<i>Blaesus, a Ro- man name.</i>	quantus, a, um,	<i>how great.</i>
Chaerōphn, ntis, m.	<i>Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.</i>	quārē, adv.	<i>why, on what account.</i>
Croesus, i, m.	<i>Cræsus, a king of Lydia.</i>	quōt, indecl.	<i>how many.</i>
cūr, adv.	<i>why, to what end.</i>	saepĕnūmĕro, adv.	<i>oftentimes, very often.</i>
fēliciter, adv.	<i>luckily.</i>	subdifficilis, e,	<i>somewhat diffi- cult.</i>
		tēlum, i, n.	<i>a dart, weapon, missile.</i>
		ūl, adv.	<i>where.</i>
		Xēnōphn, ntis, m.	<i>Xenophon, a fa- mous Athenian writer and com- mander.</i>

## EXERCISE LVI.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi

corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (*ex*) the oracle what it behooved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behooves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*Past-Imp.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus anteponendi. 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse. 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepenumero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are-sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was not (*nonne*) very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you were on that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca. 10. Do you doubt whether it behooves a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

## XLI.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 27.—Besides *ut*, *nā*, and *quā* (see Exercise XXV., etc.), the Conjunctions *quō*, *that*, and *quōmīnus*, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. *Ut*=*that, in order that, granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*; as, *eo ut spectem lūdōs, I am going in order that I may look at the games*; *accidit ut nōn dōmī essem, it happened that I was not at home*.

2. *Nē*=*that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence; as, *Haec faciō nū mē inimicum tibi putēs, these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, *sēquitur ut haec nōn vera sint, it follows that these things are not true*.

*Obs.* After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* has the meaning of *that not*, and *nē* of *that*; as, *t'mō ut dux militēs ē castris ēducit, I fear that the general may not lead the soldiers out of the camp*; *t'mō nū dux militēs ē castris ēducit, I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp*.

3. *Quin* is used after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*; as, *dīcīs nullūs est, quin littēras scribam, there is no day that I do not write a letter*; *nōn dubito quin vērum dixeris, I do not doubt you have spoken the truth*. (See Exercise XXV, C, etc.)

4. *Quō* is used for *ut* *et*, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: *haec lex datā est, quō mālēfici dēterrērentur, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred*; *portās oppidī obstruxit, quō faciilius impētum hostium rētardārēt, he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy*.

5. *Quōmīnūs*, *that not*, is used after Verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting*, etc., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive; as, *aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littēras tractēmus, age does not prevent us from cultivating literature*.

#### VOCABULARY 57.

*accido, idi, no sup., 3, to happen.*  
*cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3, I see, discern.*  
*dēterreo, rui, rī- } I frighten, de-*  
*tum, 2, } ter.*

*cōhortor, etc., dep., 1, I encourage.*  
*dimitto, misi, mit-* } *I let go, dis-*  
*sum, 3, } miss.*  
*ēnarrō, etc., 1, I relate.*



<i>confido</i> , * <i>fisus sum</i> , 3, <i>I trust.</i>	<i>fōrum</i> , i, n. <i>a market-place, forum.</i>
<i>diffido</i> , * <i>fisus sum</i> , 3, <i>I distrust.</i>	<i>impēritus</i> , a, um, <i>unskillful.</i>
<i>ānitor</i> , <i>nīsus</i> and <i>nixus sum</i> , dep., 3, } <i>I strive hard.</i>	<i>impransus</i> , a, um, <i>without having had breakfast, not having breakfasted.</i>
<i>exclāmo</i> , etc., 1, <i>I cry out.</i>	<i>infirmītas</i> , ātis, f. <i>weakness.</i>
<i>intrōeo</i> , <i>ivi</i> and <i>ii, itum</i> (irreg.), 4, } <i>I enter.</i>	<i>lātro</i> , ōnis, m. <i>a robber.</i>
<i>nitor</i> , <i>nīsus</i> and <i>nixus sum</i> , dep., 3, } <i>I strive.</i>	<i>lūdus</i> , i, m. <i>play, game, school.</i>
<i>obsto</i> , * <i>stīti</i> , <i>stītum</i> , 1, } <i>I oppose, prevent.</i>	<i>magnōpērē</i> , adv. <i>greatly, earnestly.</i>
<i>opprīmo</i> , <i>pressi</i> , <i>pressum</i> , 3, } <i>I press upon, overwhelm, crush.</i>	<i>mīrus</i> , a, um, <i>wonderful.</i>
<i>persuādeo</i> , * <i>āsi</i> , <i>āsum</i> , 2, } <i>I persuade.</i>	<i>mōdus</i> , i, m. <i>measure, manner.</i>
<i>praevenio</i> , <i>vēni</i> , <i>ventum</i> , 4, } <i>I anticipate.</i>	<i>moenia</i> , ium, n. pl. <i>fortifications.</i>
<i>prēmo</i> , <i>pressi</i> , <i>pressum</i> , 3, } <i>I press.</i>	<i>Nervii</i> , orum, m. pl. <i>the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.</i>
<i>prohibeo</i> , <i>bui</i> , <i>bitum</i> , 2, } <i>I keep off, prohibit.</i>	<i>praealtus</i> , a, um, <i>very high.</i>
<i>recūso</i> , etc., 1, <i>I object, refuse.</i>	<i>Satrius</i> , ii, m. <i>Satrius, a Roman name.</i>
<i>spēro</i> , etc., 1, <i>I hope.</i>	<i>signum</i> , i, n. <i>a sign, signal.</i>
<i>sto</i> , <i>stēti</i> , <i>statum</i> , 1, <i>I stand.</i>	<i>Trebōnius</i> , ii, m. <i>Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.</i>
<i>suādeo</i> , * <i>āsi</i> , <i>āsum</i> , 2, <i>I advise.</i>	<i>vālētūdo</i> , īnis, f. <i>health.</i>
<i>tēneo</i> , <i>nui</i> , <i>ntum</i> , 2, <i>I hold, retain.</i>	
<i>transdūco</i> , <i>duxi</i> , <i>ductum</i> , 3, } <i>I lead across.</i>	
<i>ventīto</i> , etc., 1, <i>I come frequently.</i>	
<i>Bibūlus</i> , i, m. <i>Bibulus, a Roman family name.</i>	

## PHRASES :

*Sēquitur*, it follows (with acc. and inf., or ut and subj.).—*Fācēre non possum quā*, I can not but (with subj.).—*Per me (te) stātit (quominus)*, it was owing to me or you.—*Minimū ābest quā sim*, very little is wanting that I should be; I am very near being.

## EXERCISE LVII.

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et

\* With the Dative.

hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may not pass (our) lives in silence. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they-might-obtain possession of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fit*) that out of (them) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

N.B.—In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English Infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with *ut*.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugnemus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)\* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I can not but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting that I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp but they were overwhelmed with missiles.

\* N.B.—*Quo* is used in preference to *ut* when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you that we did not obtain-possession-of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me from coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen from siding with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato from appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me from siding-with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us from worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children from obeying their parents. 8. I fear that we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear that we may not be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I can not but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

## XLII.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion; as, *Lacedaemoniī Āgēsīlāum bellātum in Āsiam mīserunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives; as, *fācīlis, easy; difficīlis, difficult; dulcīs, sweet, etc.;* and with *fās est, it is lawful; nēfās est, it is unlawful; ōpūs est, it is necessary; as, rēs difficīlis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.*

### VOCABULARY 58.

āquor, etc., dep., 1,	<i>I fetch water.</i>	convēnio, vēni, } ventum, 4,	<i>to assemble.</i>
bello, etc., 1,	<i>I wage war.</i>	pābūlor, etc., dep., 1,	<i>I forage.</i>
consūlo, ūlui, ultum, 3,	<i>I consult.</i>	postūlo, etc., 1,	<i>I demand.</i>
gusto, etc., 1,	<i>I taste.</i>	progrēdiōr, eesus, 3,	<i>I advance.</i>

<b>Aedui, orum, }</b> <i>the Aedui, a Gal-</i>	<b>nēfas, n. indecl.</b> <i>wickedness, im-</i>
<i>m. pl.</i> <b>lic tribe.</b>	<i>piety.</i>
<b>Agessilāus, i, m.</b> <i>Agessilaus, a fa-</i>	<b>ōpus, n. indecl. }</b> <i>need, necessity.</i>
<i>mous king of</i>	<i>(with abl.) }</i>
<i>Sparta.</i>	<b>publicus, a, um,</b> <i>public.</i>
<b>Divitiācus, i, m.</b> <i>Divitiācus, an</i>	<b>Veientes, um, m. pl.</b> <i>the people of</i>
<i>Aduan chief.</i>	<i>Veii, near Rome;</i>
<b>Fabius, ii, m.</b> <i>Fabius, a noble Ro-</i>	<i>the Veientes.</i>
<i>man name.</i>	
<b>Lacēdaemōnii, }</b> <i>the Lacedaemoni-</i>	<b>quisnam, quae-</b>
<i>orum, m.</i> <b>ans.</b>	<b>nam, quidnam,</b>
<b>longius, adv. }</b> <i>farther, too far.</i>	<b>etc., like quis, }</b> <i>who? what?</i>
<i>(comp.) }</i>	
<b>iūdi, orum, m. pl.</b> <i>games.</i>	<b>PHRASES:</b>
<b>Maximus, i, m.</b> <i>Maximus, a sur-</i>	<b>Nēfas est,</b> <i>it is or would be</i>
<i>name of Fabius.</i>	<i>an impiety.</i>
	<b>Ōpus est,</b> <i>there is need (of).</i>

## EXERCISE LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitem, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulatum. 6. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went to Delphi to ask who was (*Subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste. 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

## XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

**RULE 29.**—The Gerund is a Verbal Neuter Substantive, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Substantives in *ing*; as, *writing, walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative Case, the Imperfect of the Infinitive Mood taking the place of the Nominative; as,

<i>Nom.</i> Lēgere pulchra carmina suāve est,	{ reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.
<i>Gen.</i> Ars puērōs ēducandi difficilis est,	{ the art of educating boys is difficult.
<i>Dat.</i> Scribendō op̄eram dāt,	he devotes his care to writing.
<i>Acc.</i> Nātus ad agendum,	born for acting.
<i>Abl.</i> Littēras tractandō mens acūritur,	{ the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used; as, *disco nātāre. I learn swimming.*

## VOCABULARY 59.

ācuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	<i>I sharpen.</i>	haud, adv.	not.
ālo, ui, itum, 3,	<i>I nourish.</i>	jūvēnis, is, c.	a youth.
ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2,	<i>I burn, am on fire.</i>	libērē, adv.	freely.
eōgīto, etc., 1,	<i>I think, meditate.</i>	mārinus, a, um,	of the sea; sea-
		op̄era, ae, f.	pains, labor.
collōquor, lōcūtus, }	<i>I converse.</i>	plūs, ūris, n. only	{ more.
dep., 3,		in sing.; pl.	
compāro, etc., 1,	<i>I get together.</i>	plures, plura.	{
ēdo, ēdi, ētum, }	<i>I eat.</i>	studiōsus, a, um,	
ēdere or esere, }			eager after, zealous.
vēnor, etc., dep., 1,	<i>I hunt.</i>		
beātē, adv.	<i>happily.</i>		
grātia, ae, f.	<i>favor.</i>		
grātiā, abl.	<i>for the sake of.</i>		

## PHRASES:

Op̄eram dāre, to give one's whole energies to any thing, to devote one's self to it.—Inter bibendum, etc., whilst drinking, etc.

## EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime pernicioſa est plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur. 4. Peate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud

utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libère de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (pl.). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*Gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for the sake of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing about (*de*) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming a youth to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*Gerund*).

#### XLIV.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

**RULE 30.**—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective; as, *scribendus, a, um, to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Substantive; as, *scribenda est mihi epistola, a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

#### VOCABULARY 60.

adhŕeo, etc., 2,	} <i>I employ.</i>
gĕro, gessi, get-	
tum, 3,	
obŕervo, etc., 1,	} <i>I carry on, manage.</i>
provideo, vidi,	
visum, 2,	} <i>I observe, respect.</i>
	} <i>I foresee, provide.</i>

arduus, a, um, *lofty, steep, difficult.*

#### PHRASE:

Agĕre aetĕtem, *to spend one's life.*

#### EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapi-

entia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus aetas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*Dat.*) ought so to train-up (his) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (pro) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*Dat.*). 8. Before (*prae*) all other things (*res*) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*Dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*Dat.*) should not despise death.

**RULE 31.**—When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the Case which the Verb governs, and the agent or doer is put in the Dative Case; as, obtemperandum est (nōbīs) virtūtis praeceptīs (*Dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue*; suo cuique iudicio (*Ablative*) utendum est, *each one must use his own judgment*. N.B.—The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

## VOCABULARY 61.

ingrēdiōr, gressus, 3, <i>I enter.</i>	jūdicium, ii, n. <i>judgment.</i>
interclūdo, si, sum, 3, <i>I shut off, intercept.</i>	pārātus, a, um, <i>prepared, ready.</i>
obtempēro, etc., 1, <i>I obey, comply with.</i>	quisque, quaeque, quidque & quodque; gen. cujusque, etc., <i>every one.</i>
commeātus, us, m. <i>provisions, supplies.</i>	quō, adv. <i>whither.</i>
commilitō, ōnis, m. <i>fellow-soldier, comrade.</i>	
istūc, adv. ( <i>from</i> isto), <i>thither, where you are.</i>	

PHRASE:

**Fieri de aliquo, to become of one ;**  
as, quid factum est de illo, *what has become of that man?*

## EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est quam confecisti viam. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in every thing. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*Dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

RULE 32.—The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund.

1. The Accusativo is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in gender, number, and case; thus

*Gen.* Ars puērōs educandī difficilis est  
becomes

*Ars puērōrum educandōrum difficilis est*

in the following way: (1.) The Accusative *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus, a, um*. (3.) The Gerundive is put in the same case, gender, and number, as *puerorum*; consequently, *educandorum*.

*Dat.* Opēram dāt āgro cōlendō,

{ he devotes himself to culti-  
vating land.



<i>Acc.</i> Ad p̄tendam p̄cem v̄nērunt l̄gātī,	{ <i>embassadors came to seek for peace.</i>
<i>Ab.</i> Litt̄eris tractandis mens ācūtūr,	
	{ <i>the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.</i>

*Obs.* The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive; as, *st̄dium pl̄rū cognoscendī*, *the desire of learning more*, rather than *st̄dium pl̄rium cognoscendōrum*, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

## VOCABULARY 62.

concedo, cessi, } cessum, 3, }	<i>I yield, retire.</i>	Campānia, ae, f. <i>Campania, a province of Italy.</i>
incendo, di, sum, 3, }	<i>I burn (trans.).</i>	occūpātus, a, um, <i>engaged, busy.</i>
percipio, cēpi, } ceptum, 3, }	<i>I perceive.</i>	p̄rītus, a, um, <i>experienced, skilled in.</i>
affectus, a, um,	<i>made, disposed.</i>	quāsi, conj. <i>as if, just as.</i>
Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, name of a famous Roman.</i>	PHRASES : Cōnsilium inire, <i>to enter on, form a design.</i> In spem venire, <i>to conceive a hope.</i>
Cassius, ii, m.	<i>Cassius, a friend of Brutus.</i>	

## EXERCISE LXII.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratia initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potientorum castrorum. 10. Oculis probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (pl.) were trained-up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*Gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (*res*). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (*maxime*) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*Pres.-Perf.*) on-the-subject-of (*de*) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (*capio*) from (*ex*) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (*oportet*) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

## ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY

(and exceptions to some previous rules).

*Final Consonants. Polysyllables.*

1. Words of more than one syllable ending in a consonant, except *c* or *s*, have the vowel preceding that consonant short; as, *illūd*, *semēl*, *agmēn*, *calcār*, etc.

2. Final *c* has the preceding vowel long, except *donēc*.

3. Final *as*, *es*, *os* are long; as, *terrās*, *finēs*, *vīrōs*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es* final is short in *penēs*, and in nouns of the Third Declension, which increase short in the Genitive, as *mīlēs*, *itis*, except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cērēs*, and *pariēs*.

*Os* final is short in *compōs* and *impōs*.

4. Final *is* and *us*; see p. 7 and 38; monosyll., p. 15.

Other exceptions fall chiefly under Rules 3 and 4, p. 114.

*Final Vowels* (see p. 7 and 114).

5. *I* final is long, except in *nīsī* and *quāsi*.

EXCEPTION.—*I* final in *mīhi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, and *ubi*, is common.

6. *O* final is long, except in *citō*, *duō*, *egō*, *modō*, and *octō*.

EXCEPTION.—*O* final is short also in the verbs *sciō*, *nesciō*, *putō*, *volō*.

*Penults of Perfects and Supines.*

7. Perfects of two syllables have the penult long; as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

EXCEPTION.—The seven following Perfects have the penult short: *bibi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*, *scīdi*, *stēti*, *sūtī*, and *tūli*.

8. The syllable of reduplication in the Perfect is always short; as, *cēcīdi*, *tūtūdi*, etc.; and the vowel of the penult, if before a single consonant, is short also, as *dīdīci* (from *disco*), *tūtūdi* (from *tundo*), except *cēcīdi* (from *cædo*), and *pēpēdi* (from *pedo*).

9. Supines of two syllables have the penult long; as, *cāsum*, *mōtum*, *vīsum*, etc.

EXCEPTION.—The following Supines have the penult short: *cītum* (from *cio*), *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, and the part. *rātus*, from dep. *reor*.

10. Supines in *utum* of more than two syllables have the penult long; as, *acūtum*, *minūtum*, etc.

NOTE.—The forms *condūtum*, *dirūtum*, etc., belong under rule for compounds (p. 114).

# EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.

## VOCABULARY 63.

appello, etc., 1,	<i>I call, name.</i>	institūtum, i, n.	<i>institution, cus- tom.</i>
Aquitāni, orum,	<i>the Aquitani, a people of Gaul.</i>	incōlo, lui, cul-	<i>trans., to inhabit, with acc.; intr., to dwell.</i>
m. (pl.),		tum, 3,	
Belgae, arum, m.	<i>the Belgæ or Bel- gians, a people of Gaul.</i>	Matrōna, æ, m.	<i>Matrona (Marne), a river of Gaul.</i>
(pl.),			
Celtæ, arum, m.	<i>the Celtæ or Celts, inhabiting one of the divisions of Gaul.</i>	præcēdo, cessi,	<i>I surpass, exccel.</i>
(pl.),		cessum, 3,	
continenter, adv.	<i>always, incessant- ly.</i>	propterea quod,	<i>because.</i>
		conj.	
differo, distūli,	<i>I differ.</i>	reliquus, a, um,	<i>remaining, rest.</i>
dilatūm, dif- fero,		qui, quæ, quod,	<i>who, which, what.</i>
Galli, orum, m.	<i>the Galli or Gauls.</i>	rel. pron.	
(pl.),		quotidiānus, a, um,	<i>daily.</i>
Garumna, æ, m.	<i>Garumna (Ga- ronne), a river of Gaul.</i>	Sēquāna, æ, f.	<i>the Sequana (Seine), a river of Gaul.</i>
or f.			
hic, hæc, hoc,	<i>this.</i>	tertius, a, um,	<i>third.</i>
		tres, triz,	<i>three.</i>

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres. Unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtæ, qui lingua nostra Galli appellantur.

II. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dividit, a Belgis Matrōna et Sequana.

III. Fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

IV. Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt.

## VOCABULARY 64.

<b>Aquitania</b> , ae, f. <i>the country of the Aquitani, Aquitania.</i>	<b>nobilitas</b> , ātis, f. <i>nobility, the nobility (collectively).</i>
<b>attingo</b> , tīgi, } <i>I touch upon, reach to.</i>	<b>occāsus</b> , us, m. <i>the going down, setting; occ. solis = the west.</i>
<b>tactum</b> , 3, }	
<b>cāpio</b> , cēpi, cap- } <i>I take.</i>	<b>pertineo</b> , tinui, } <i>intr., I reach, ex-</i>
<b>tum</b> , 3, }	<b>tentum</b> , 2, } <i>tend; tend.</i>
<b>contineo</b> , tinui, } <i>I contain, confine, bound.</i>	<b>provincia</b> , ae, f. <i>province.</i>
<b>tentum</b> , 2, }	<b>Pyrenaei</b> , orum, } <i>{ the Pyrenees, be-</i>
<b>extrēmus</b> , a, um, } <i>outermost, farthest; last.</i>	<b>m. (montes)</b> , } <i>tween Gaul and Spain.</i>
<b>is</b> , ea, id, } <i>he, she, it, that.</i>	<b>septemtriones</b> , } <i>the north.</i>
<b>Hispania</b> , ae, f. <i>Spain.</i>	<b>um</b> , m. }
<b>Jura</b> , ae, m. <i>Mt. Jura, in Gaul.</i>	<b>Sequāni</b> , orum, m. <i>the Sequani.</i>
<b>Lemānus</b> , i, m. } <i>Lake Leman, or</i>	<b>Sequānus</b> , a, um, <i>of the Sequani,</i>
<b>(lācus)</b> , } <i>Lake of Geneva.</i>	<b>Sequanian.</b>
<b>Orgētōrix</b> , īgis, } <i>Orgētorix, a chief of the Helvetii.</i>	<b>undique</b> , adv. <i>on every side.</i>
<b>m.</b> }	<b>vergo</b> , ēre, 3, def. <i>I turn, incline.</i>

V. Una pars initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, oceano, finibus Belgarum. Attingit etiam flumen Rhenum. Vergit ad septemtriones.

VI. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septemtriones et orientem solem.

VII. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

VIII. Apud Helvetios, nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgētorix. Is conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

IX. Facilius eis persuasit, quod undique, loci natura, Helvetii continentur; una ex parte, flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte, monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemano, et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

## VOCABULARY 65.

<b>acceptus</b> , a, um, <i>acceptable, agreeable.</i>	<b>Aedus</b> , a, um, <i>Æduan; pl., the Ædui.</i>
<b>adductus</b> , a, um, <i>induced.</i>	<b>ante</b> , as adv. <i>before, previously.</i>

<b>carrus</b> , i, m.	<i>a car, wagon.</i>	<b>eripio</b> , rīpui, }	<i>I snatch away,</i>
<b>Casticus</b> , i, m.	<i>Casticus, a Sequanian chief.</i>	<b>reptum</b> , 3, }	<i>rescue.</i>
<b>cliens</b> , ntia, c.	<i>a client, retainer.</i>	<b>fāmilia</b> , ae, f.	<i>a body of slaves (of one house); a household.</i>
<b>coëmo</b> , cōmī, emp- tum, 3, }	<i>I buy up.</i>	<b>Idem, eōdem, Idem</b> ,	<i>the same.</i>
<b>cōgo</b> , cōgī, cōco- tum, 3, }	<i>I compel.</i>	<b>ignis</b> , is, m.	<i>fire.</i>
<b>condūco</b> , duxi, }	<i>I bring together,</i>	<b>item</b> , adv.	<i>also.</i>
<b>ductum</b> , 3, }	<i>collect.</i>	<b>lĕgātio</b> , onis, f.	<i>an embassy.</i>
<b>confirmo</b> , are, }	<i>I confirm, ratify.</i>	<b>maxime</b> , adv.	<i>most.</i>
etc., 1, }		<b>obaeratus</b> , i, m.	<i>a debtor.</i>
<b>crēmo</b> , āre, etc., }	<i>I burn.</i>	<b>plebs</b> , ēbis, f.	<i>the common people; the commons.</i>
1, }		<b>prōfectio</b> , onis, f.	<i>a setting out, departure.</i>
<b>damno</b> , āre, etc., }	<i>I condemn.</i>	<b>quam maximus</b> ,	<i>the greatest possible, as great as possible.</i>
1, }		<b>que</b> , conj. (enclitic),	<i>and.</i>
<b>dēligo</b> , lēgi, lēo- tum, 3, }	<i>I choose, select.</i>	<b>regnum</b> , i, n.	<i>sovereign power.</i>
<b>Dumnōrix</b> , igis, m.	<i>Dumnorix, an Æduan chief.</i>	<b>sēmentis</b> , is, f.	<i>a sowing (of seed).</i>
<b>enuncio</b> , āre, }	<i>I announce, report.</i>		
etc., 1, }			
<b>jūmentum</b> , i, n.	<i>a beast of burden.</i>		

X. His rebus adducti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere; sementes quam maximas facere; cum proximis civitatibus amicitiam confirmare. In tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant.

XI. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Sequano, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat. Itemque Dumnorigi, Aeduo, qui maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet. Inter se jusjurandum dant, et totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

XII. Ea res ut Helvetiis enunciata, Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, et omnes clientes obaeratosque conduxit. Per eos se eripuit.

## VOCABULARY 66.

<b>Allobrōges</b> , um, }	<i>the Allobroges, a</i>	<b>arbitror</b> , āri, ātus, }	<i>I think, sup-</i>
m. pl.	<i>people of Gaul.</i>	dep., 1,	<i>pose.</i>
<b>duo</b> , ae, o,	<i>two.</i>	<b>Geneva</b> , ae, f.	<i>Geneva.</i>

<b>cibāria, orum,</b> { <i>n. pl.</i> } provisions, supplies.	<b>nihilominus, adv.</b> none the less, nevertheless.
<b>dōmus, us</b> (or <i>i, f.</i> ) { a house, home; domi, at home.	<b>nuncio, āre,</b> { I announce, declare.
<b>expeditus, a, um,</b> ready, expeditious, light-armed.	<b>etc., 1,</b> }
<b>incito, āre, etc., 1,</b> I arouse, provoke.	<b>omnino, adv.</b> on the whole, altogether.
<b>mātūro, āre,</b> { I hasten.	<b>privātus, a, um,</b> private.
<b>etc., 1,</b> }	<b>rescindo, scidi,</b> { I cut down.
<b>mōlo, lui, li-</b> { I grind.	<b>scissum, 3,</b> }
<b>tum, 3,</b> }	<b>ultērior, us,</b> { farther.
<b>multo, adv.</b> much.	<b>comp. adj.</b> }
	<b>vādum, i, n.</b> a ford.
	<b>vīcus, i, m.</b> a village.

XIII. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est. Post ejus mortem nihilominus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur. Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, vicos, privata aedificia incendunt.

XIV. Trium mensium molita cibaria quemque domo efferre jubent. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent; unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum; alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditus, propterea quod Rhodanus nonnullis locis vado transitur.

XV. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est Geneva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Omnibus rebus ad perfectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Caesari quum id nunciatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et in Galliam ulteriorem contendit. Pontem jubet rescindi.

## VOCABULARY 67.

<b>Ambarri, orum,</b> { <i>m. pl.</i> } the Ambarri.	<b>dēpōpūlo, āre,</b> { I lay waste.
<b>angustiae, arum, f.</b> narrowness, narrow passes; straits.	<b>etc., 1,</b> }
<b>consanguineus,</b> { related, connected by blood;	<b>deprēcātor, oris,</b> { an intercessor.
<b>a, um,</b> { subst., a relative.	<b>m.</b> }
<b>conscribo, psi,</b> { I enroll, enlist.	<b>expecto, āre, etc., 1,</b> I await, expect.
<b>ptum, 3,</b> }	<b>fūga, ae, f.</b> flight.
	<b>hīberna, orum, n.</b> { winter quarters.
	<b>pl.</b> }
	<b>impetro, āre, etc., 1,</b> I obtain by request.
	<b>inde, adv.</b> thence.

invitus, a, um,	unwilling.
itaque, adv.	therefore, accordingly.
mālfōcium, ii, n.	wrong-doing, injury.
mātrīmōnium, ii, n.	marriage, matrimony.
perdūco, duxi, ductum, 3,	I prolong, extend.
pōpūlor, āri, ātus, dep., 1,	I lay waste.
possessio, ōnis, f.	a possession.
primus, a, um,	first.
rēcipio, cēpi, cēptum, 3,	I take back, betake.
Santōni, orum, m. pl.	the Santoni, or Santones.

Segusiāni, orum, m. pl.	the Segusiani.
septimus, a, um,	the seventh.
sese, pron.	redupl. from se, p. 41.
vis, f., def. p. 26,	strength, force.
Vocontii, orum, m. pl.	the Vocontii.

## PHRASES:

Esse sibi in animo,	that it was their intention.
Certior fio,	I am informed.
Certiorē (ali- quem) facere,	to inform (any one).
Plurimum posse, or valēre,	to be very powerful, to have very great influence.

XVI. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, qui di erent: Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere. Caesar a lacu Lemano ad montem Juram murum fossamque perducit. Negat se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant.

XVII. His quum persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut, eo deprecatore, impetrarent. Dumnorix apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut, per fines suos, Helvetios ire patiantur.

XVIII. Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres ex hibernis educit, et in ulteriorem Galliam, per Alpes, ire contendit. In fines Vocontiorum die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt, extra provinciam, trans Rhodanum primi.

XIX. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerat, et Aeduorum agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. Eodem tempore Ambarri, consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorē faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item

Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt. Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

## VOCABULARY 68.

abdo, dīdi, dītum, 3, <i>I conceal, hide.</i>	jūgum, i, n.	yoke; mittere
ac, conj.		sub j., to send
aggredior, grēdi, } <i>I attack.</i>		under the yoke
gressus, dep., 3, }		(a military disgrace).
Arar, āris, m.	lēmītas, ētis, f.	gentleness, slowness.
cālāmītas, ātis, f.	linter, tris, f.	a boat.
	nam, conj.	for.
Cassiānus, a, um,	nondum, adv.	not yet.
	pāgus, i, m.	a canton, district.
commōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, }	persēquor, sēqui, }	<i>I pursue, follow through.</i>
conciādo, cīdi, cīsum, 3 (from caedo), }	persēvō, āre, etc., 1, }	<i>I persevere, continue.</i>
consequor, sēqui, sēcūtus, dep., 3, }	persolvo, lvi, lūtum, 3, }	<i>I pay; p. poenae, to pay the penalty.</i>
consisto, stīti, stītum, 3, }	pōpūlus, i, m.	people.
Divīco, ōnis, m.	princeps, ipis,	first, chief; subst., a chief.
dōlus, i, m.	quartus, a, um,	fourth.
	quātuor, indecl.	four.
	rātis, is, f.	a raft, float.
eo, ire, īvi, ītum } <i>I go.</i>	rēptīnus, a, um,	sudden.
(irreg. 4, p. 105). }	sin, conj.	but if.
impēdio, īvi, ītum, 4, }	Tigūrīnus, a, um,	of the Tigurini, Tigurine, or Tigurian.
incommōdum, i, n.		
	vero, adv.	indeed, however.
incrēdībilis, e,	vīgilia, ae, f.	watch.
influo, uxi, uxum, 3, to flow (into).		

XX. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduarum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii, rati- bus et lintribus junctis, transibant. Ubi Caesar certior factus est, tres copiarum partes Helvetios transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen esse, de tertia vigilia e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum transierat.

XXI. Eos impeditos aggressus, magnam eorum partem con-



cidit. Reliqui sese in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus Lucium Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, quae pars calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit.

XXII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commoti, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare agit:

XXIII. Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, ubi Caesar eos esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent. Quare, ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet.

## VOCABULARY 69.

agmen, īnis, n.	a moving body, line.	ipse, a, um (p. 44), self.
aliēnus, a, um,	another's, foreign, unfavorable.	lācesso, sivi, si- tum, 3, } I provoke, assault, harass.
amplius (comp.)	more. [able.	mātūrus, a, um, ripe.
aut,	or.	mille, millia (p. 33), thousand.
averto, ti, sum, 3,	I turn away.	minus (comp.), less.
coepti (def. p. 111),	I begin.	mōdō, adv. only.
commemōro, āre, etc., 1,	I relate, mention.	ne . . . quidem, not even.
consuesco, suēvi, suētum, 3,	I am accustomed.	nonnunquam, adv. sometimes.
contūmēlia, ae, f.	insult, affront,	novissimus, a, um, newest, rearmost;
depōno, pōui, pōitum, 3,	I lay aside.	n. agmen, the rear.
discēdo, cessi, cessum, 3,	I depart, retire.	num, whether? sometimes only asks a question.
dūbitatio, onis, f.	doubt.	pābulum, i, n. fodder.
flāgito, āre, etc., 1,	I demand.	postērus, a, um, following, next.
frumentum, i, n.	grain.	praesentia, ae, f. presence; in praesentia, at present, for the present.
injuria, ae, f.	injury, wrong.	publicē, adv. in the name of the state, publicly.
intērim, adv.	in the mean time, meanwhile.	

<i>quindēcim, indecl.</i>	<i>fifteen.</i>	<i>sēni, æ, a,</i>	<i>six each, by sires.</i>
<i>quīni, æ, a,</i>	<i>five a piece, by</i>	<i>subsisto, stīti, }</i>	<i>I make a stand,</i>
	<i>fives.</i>	<i>stītum, 3, }</i>	<i>stand.</i>
<i>rāpīna, æ, f.</i>	<i>a plundering, ra-</i>	<i>subvēho, vexti, }</i>	<i>I bring up, con-</i>
	<i>pine.</i>	<i>vectum, 3, }</i>	<i>vey.</i>
<i>recens, ntis,</i>	<i>fresh, recent.</i>	<i>suppēto, tīvi, tī-</i>	<i>to be supplied, to</i>
<i>responsum, i, n.</i>	<i>an answer.</i>	<i>tum, 3, }</i>	<i>be at hand.</i>
<i>sātisfācio, fēci, }</i>	<i>I satisfy (with</i>	<i>tāmen, conj.</i>	<i>still, nevertheless.</i>
<i>factum, 3, }</i>	<i>dat.).</i>	<i>testis, is, c.</i>	<i>a witness.</i>

XXIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas commemorassent, memoria teneret. Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse? Tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat, et, si Aeduīs de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem facturum.

XXV. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consueverint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato, discessit. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar. Equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt. Helvetii audacius subsistere, nonnunquam nostros lacessere coeperunt.

XXVI. Caesar suos a proelio continebat; ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti, inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum, non amplius quinīs aut senīs millibus passuum interesset. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam, propter frigora, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat. Eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.

## VOCABULARY 70.

<i>accūso, āre, etc., 1,</i>	<i>I accuse, inveigh</i>	<i>audācia, æ, f.</i>	<i>boldness, daring.</i>
	<i>against.</i>	<i>augeo, auxi, }</i>	<i>I increase.</i>
<i>affīnitas, ātis, f.</i>	<i>marriage, alli-</i>	<i>auctum, 2, }</i>	
	<i>ance.</i>	<i>celē. iter, adv.</i>	<i>quickly.</i>

complūres, ia,	a good many, very many.	Liscus, i, m.	Liscus, an Æduan chief.
comporto, āre, } etc., 1, }	I bring together, collect.	magistrātus, } us, m. }	magistracy, office.
concilium, ii, n.	a council.	obtīneo, ti- nui, ten- tum, 2, }	I obtain, secure.
cupīdus, a, um,	desirous, coveting (with gen.).	ōdi (def., p. 111),	I hate.
dēsigno, āre, } etc., 1, }	I mark out, designate.	plūres, in and a,	more, severat.
despēro, āre, } etc., 1, }	I despair (with de and abl.).	praesertim, adv.	especially.
dimīnuo, ui, ūtum, 3,	I diminish.	prēces, um, f. pl.	prayers.
diutius, adv. (comp.) }	longer (than is reasonable), too long.	prētium, ii, n.	price, value, sum.
dūco, duxi, ductum, 3,	I lead out, prolong (time), put off, delay.	propōno, pō- sui, pōsi- tum, 3, }	I put before, set forth, state.
fāmilīaris, e,	of one's family, private; res f., private property.	quāmdiu (or sep.),	how long; i. e., as long as.
fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2, }	I favor (with dat.).	quinetiam (or sep.),	nay too, moreover.
insto, stiti, 1, } irreg. }	I press on, approach, am at hand.	rēdīmo, ōmi, emptum, 3, }	I buy back, buy up, contract for, farm.
jacto, āre, etc., 1, }	I toss over, discuss; boast.	res nōvae,	new affairs; i. e., a revolution.
libērālitās, } ātis, f. }	liberality.	restituo, ui, ūtum, 3, }	I restore, re-establish.
licēor, licitus, } licēri, 2, dep. }	I bid (at auction).	retīneo, tinui, tentum, 2, }	I retain, detain.
		scrēto, adv.	in private, secretly.
		sēditiosus, a, um,	seditionous.
		sublēvo, āre, etc., 1, }	I aid, support.

XXVII. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, graviter eos accusat, quod ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim quum, magna ex parte, eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit.

XXVIII. Tum demum Liscus proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem detertere, ne frumentum conferant. Ab iisdem nostra consilia hostibus enunciari; hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod rem Caesari enunciārit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit; et, ob eam causam, quamdiu potuerit, tacuisse.

XXIX. Caesar hac oratione Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod, pluribus praesentibus, eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit; Liscum retinet; dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum novarum rerum; complures annos, omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere; propterea quod, illo licente, contra liceri audeat nemo.

XXX. His rebus suam rem familiarem auxisse, magnum numerum equitatus semper circum se habere. Favere Helvetiis propter affinitatem; odisse Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani, non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare.

## VOCABULARY 71.

abstineo, nui, ntum, 2,	<i>I hold back, refrain.</i>	consido, cōdi, sessum, 3,	<i>I encamp.</i>
accurro, cūcurri, cursum, 3,	<i>I run up to, hasten.</i>	dēnique, adv.	<i>lastly, at last.</i>
adhībeo, hībui, hībītum, 2,	<i>I have present, invito be present.</i>	dextra, ae, f.	<i>right hand.</i>
admitto, mīsi, missum, 3,	<i>I send to, urge forward.</i>	existimātio, onis, f.	<i>opinion, estimation.</i>
adscendo, ndi, nsum, 3,	<i>I climb, ascend.</i>	existīmo, āre, etc., 1,	<i>I think, believe.</i>
adscensus, us, m.	<i>ascent.</i>	explōrātor, ōris, m.	<i>a scout, spy.</i>
animadverto, verti, versum, 3, and	<i>I turn my attention to, perceive;</i>	frāternus, a, um,	<i>brotherly.</i>
animum adverto,	<i>anim. in, I punish, proceed against.</i>	Gallīcus, a, um,	<i>Gallic.</i>
circūtus, us, m.	<i>circuit, a going round.</i>	insigne, is, n.	<i>a standard, an ensign.</i>
collis, is, m.	<i>a hill.</i>	intervallum, i, n.	<i>distance, interval.</i>
commōnefacio, fēcī, factum, 3,	<i>I admonish, remind of.</i>	jugum (montis),	<i>summit.</i>
Considius, ii, m.	<i>Considius, a Roman officer.</i>	justitia, ae, f.	<i>justice.</i>
		lacrima, ae, f.	<i>a tear.</i>
		neque, conj.	<i>nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.</i>
		obsecro, āre, etc., 1,	<i>I beg, entreat.</i>
		octo,	<i>eight.</i>
		offendo, ndi, nsum, 3,	<i>I offend, displease.</i>
		ostendo, ndi, ntum or tum, 3,	<i>I point out, show.</i>

<i>perterreo, rui, rītum, 2, I frighten greatly.</i>	<i>tēpārātīm, adv. separately.</i>	
<i>praecipio, cēpi, cep- tum, 3, I command, enjoin.</i>	<i>subdūco, duxi, duc- tum, 3, I lead down, withdraw.</i>	
<i>prendo (or prehen- do), ndi, nsum, 3, I take, grasp.</i>	<i>supplicium, ii, n. punishment.</i>	
<i>priusquam, sooner than, before that, before.</i>	<i>suspicio, onis, f. suspicion.</i>	
	<i>temperantia, ae, f. temperance, moderation.</i>	
<i>quingenti, ae, a, five hundred.</i>	<i>vīto, āre, etc., 1, I avoid, shun.</i>	
<i>quisquam (quae- quam), quidquam, or quioquam, } any one, any thing.</i>	<i>vōco, āre, etc., 1, I call, sum- mon.</i>	
<i>renuncio, āre, etc., 1, I bring back word, an- nounce.</i>	<i>vōluntas, ātis, f. good will, af- fection.</i>	
<i>reprehendo, ndi, } I blame, find nsum, 3, fault with.</i>		
<i>rēpugno, āre, etc., 1, I oppose, fight against.</i>		

## PHRASES:

<i>Mille passus, a (Roman) mile; pl. millia passuum, miles.</i>
<i>Summus mons, the top of the mount- ain.</i>
<i>Equo admisso, at full speed.</i>

XXXI. Quum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque, priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet; simul commonefacit, quae, ipso praesente, in concilio Gallorum sint dicta; et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit.

XXXII. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Caesar ejus dextram prendit; Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet.

XXXIII. Eodem die, ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedissee millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis, et qualis in circuitu adscen-

sus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum, cum duobus legionibus summum jugum montis adscendere jubet. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit; equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.

XXXIV. Prima luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset, Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se ex Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.

XXXV. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum (ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret), monte occupato, nostros expectabat, proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die, per exploratores Caesar cognovit, montem a suis teneri, et Considium perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso renunciasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur; et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

## VOCABULARY 72.

bīdūm, i, n.	space of two days.	duodēviginti (in-	} eighteen.
Bibracte, is, n. }	Bibracte, a town	decl.),	
(abl. Bibracte) }	of the Ædui.	eo, adv.	} thither, to it.
Boii, orum, m. pl.	the Boii, a people	evello, ii, vul-	} I pull out.
	in Gaul.	sum, 3,	
circumvēnio, vē-	} I surround.	frūmentārius, a,	} of or relating to
ni, ventum, 4,		um,	
claudio, si, sum, 3,	I shut, close in.	res frumentaria,	a supply of grain,
colligo, āre, etc., 1,	I bind together.		provisions.
commōde, adv.	conveniently, ad-	ictus, us, m.	a stroke, blow.
	vantageously.	impēdimentum,	hinderance; in
	crowded, dense.	i, n.	} pl., baggage.
confertus, a, um,		inflecto, exi, }	
conspīcor, āri, }	} I behold.	exum, 3, }	
ātus, dep., 1, }			insequor, qui, se-
converto, ti, sum, 3,	I change about.	cūtus, dep., 3,	} tack.
cōpius, a, um,	wealthy, abund-	intercludō, clū-	} I shut or cut off
	ant.	si, clūsūm, 3,	
defessus, a, um,	exhausted, worn	mēdius, a, um,	middle, interven-
deinde,	then. [out.		ing; medius
disjicio, jēci, jec-	} I disperse, scat-		collis, the mid-
tum, 3,		ter.	
distingo, inxi,	} I draw.	pīlum, i, n.	a javelin.
ictum, 3,			

<i>perfringo, frēgi,</i>	<i>I break through.</i>	<i>rursus, adv.</i>	<i>again.</i>
<i>fractum, 3,</i>		<i>sarcina, ae, f.</i>	<i>baggage.</i>
<i>phalanx, ngia, f.</i>	<i>a phalanx, compact mass.</i>	<i>seu or sive,</i>	<i>whether; sive ...</i>
<i>postquam,</i>	<i>after that, when.</i>		<i>sive or seu ...</i>
<i>postridie, adv.</i>	<i>on the day after (with gen.); next day.</i>		<i>seu, whether ...</i>
<i>pro, prep.</i>	<i>for, instead of, as.</i>	<i>sinistra, ae, f.</i>	<i>or.</i>
<i>prospicio, spexi,</i>	<i>I look out for,</i>	<i>succedo, cessi,</i>	<i>left hand.</i>
<i>spectum, 3,</i>	<i>provide.</i>	<i>cessum, 3,</i>	<i>I come up to, approach.</i>
<i>redintegro, āre,</i>	<i>I renew.</i>	<i>superior, us,</i>	<i>higher, upper.</i>
<i>etc., 1,</i>		<i>sustineo, tinui,</i>	<i>I sustain, withstand.</i>
<i>reféro, ferre, etc.,</i>	<i>to retreat, fall back.</i>	<i>tentum, 2,</i>	<i>stand.</i>
<i>irreg.; pedem</i>		<i>tandem, adv.</i>	<i>at length.</i>
<i>referre,</i>		<i>tollo, sustuli,</i>	<i>I take away, remove.</i>
<i>reicio, jeci, jectum, 3,</i>	<i>I cast or drive back.</i>	<i>sublātum, 3,</i>	
<i>removeo, mōvi,</i>	<i>I move out of the way, remove.</i>	<i>transfigo, fixi,</i>	<i>I pierce through.</i>
<i>mōtum, 2,</i>		<i>fixum, 3,</i>	
		<i>triplex, icis,</i>	<i>three-fold, triple.</i>
		<i>Tulingi, orum,</i>	<i>the Tulingi, a people in Gaul.</i>
		<i>m. pl.</i>	

XXXVI. *Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum duodeviginti aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Helvetii, seu quod perterritos Romanos discedere existimarent, sive quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacerare coeperunt. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit; equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit.*

XXXVII. *Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit. Sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab iis, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt. Ipsi confertissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium remotis equis, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos, proelium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrugerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis districtis in eos impetum fecerunt.*

XXXVIII. *Gallis magno erat impedimento, quod, pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum*

ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere, neque, sinistra impedita, satis commode pugnare poterant. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte, et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui agmen hostium claudebant, ex itinere nostros aggressi, circumvenere; et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem se receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt.

## VOCABULARY 73.

<b>acriter, adv.</b>	<i>sharply, vigorously.</i>	<b>occisus, a, um,</b>	<i>slain.</i>
<b>ēmitto, mīai, } missum, 3, }</b>	<i>I lose.</i>	<b>perfūgium, fūgi, } fūgitum, 3, }</b>	<i>I flee across for safety, take refuge, desert.</i>
<b>anceps, cīpītis, } āversus, a, um, }</b>	<i>doubtful, critical. turned away; av. hostis, the back of an enemy.</i>	<b>pēs, pēdis, m. } posco, pōposci, } poscītum, 3, }</b>	<i>foot. I call for, demand.</i>
<b>līpartīto, adv.</b>	<i>in two parts.</i>	<b>projicio, jēcī, jec- } tum, 3, }</b>	<i>I throw or cast (forward).</i>
<b>bōnitas, ātis, f.</b>	<i>goodness, excellence.</i>	<b>rātio, onis, f.</b>	<i>plan, design; account.</i>
<b>centum,</b>	<i>a hundred.</i>	<b>secundus, a, um,</b>	<i>second.</i>
<b>conficio, fēcī, fec- } tum, 3, }</b>	<i>I make up, draw out; finish.</i>	<b>senex, is, m.</b>	<i>an old man.</i>
<b>copiam facere,</b>	<i>to furnish an opportunity; afford a supply.</i>	<b>sepultura, ae, f.</b>	<i>burial.</i>
<b>dēcem (indecl.),</b>	<i>ten.</i>	<b>sexāgintā (indecl.),</b>	<i>sixty.</i>
<b>dēditio, onis, f.</b>	<i>surrender.</i>	<b>signum, i, n.</b>	<i>standard.</i>
<b>excipio, cēpi, cep- } tum, 3, }</b>	<i>I receive.</i>	<b>submōveo, mōvi, } motum, 2, }</b>	<i>I remove, withdraw.</i>
<b>grātūlor, āri, } ātus, dep., 1, }</b>	<i>I congratulate.</i>	<b>summa, ae, f.</b>	<i>amount, sum total.</i>
<b>inōpia, ae, f.</b>	<i>want.</i>	<b>suppliciter, adv.</b>	<i>suppliantly.</i>
<b>intermitto, mīai, } missum, 3, }</b>	<i>I send or put between; in pass. to intervene.</i>	<b>tabula, ae, f.</b>	<i>a tablet, register.</i>
<b>jūvo, jūvi, jū- } tum, 1, }</b>	<i>I aid.</i>	<b>trēcenti, ae, a,</b>	<i>three hundred.</i>
<b>Lingōnes, um, m. } pl. }</b>	<i>the Lingones, a people in Gaul.</i>	<b>trīdium, i, n.</b>	<i>a space of three days.</i>
<b>nōminātim, adv.</b>	<i>by name.</i>	<b>trīgintā (indecl.),</b>	<i>thirty.</i>
<b>objicio, jēcī, jec- } tum, 3, }</b>	<i>I throw in the way of, oppose.</i>	<b>vāco, āre, etc., 1,</b>	<i>to be idle, unoccupied.</i>
		<b>vallum, i, n.</b>	<i>a rampart.</i>
		<b>vespērus, i, m.</b>	<i>evening.</i>

## PHRASE :

**Conversa signa } inferre, }** *to wheel about and advance.*

XXXIX. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt; prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia.



ut venientes exciperet. Ita, ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est; propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant.

XL. Impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte ierunt; in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt; quum, et propter vulnera militum et sepulturam occisorum, nostri eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XLI. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum se ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, adventum suum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Helvetios in fines suos reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus frugibus amissis, domi nihil erat, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit, quod noluit eum locum vacare, ne, propter bonitatem agrorum Germani in Helvetiorum fines transirent.

XLII. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt, literis Graecis confectae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent; et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Summa omnium fuerat ad millia trecenta sexaginta et octo. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt.

## ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY

(and exceptions to some previous rules).

## I. A vowel before another vowel is short.

*Exceptions.*

1. The vowel *e* before final *i* in the Genitive and Dative of the 5th Declension is long; as, *dīi*.

But in *fidei* and *rei* the *e* is common; in *spei* it is short.

2. The *i* in Genitives in *ius* is to be pronounced long in prose; is common in poetry, except *alius*, and *alterius*.

3. The *i* in *fio* and its tenses is long, except when followed by *er*.

4. The *a* and *e* are long in proper names in *ātus* and *ēius*.

*Increments.*

II. In the singular Increment of Nouns and Adjectives *a* and *o* are long; as, *aetas*, *ātis*; *soror*, *ōris*.

*Exceptions.*

1. All words in *bs* and *ps* increasing in *a* or *o* have the increase short; as, *trabs*, *ābis*; *ops*, *ōpis*.

2. Names of persons ending in *al* and *ar* increase short; as, *Hannibal*, *ālis*; *Caesar*, *āris*.

3. The Nouns *sal*, *jubar*, *lar*, *par*, *anas*, *mas*, *vas* (*vādis*), and *fax* also increase short.

NOTE.—Words adopted directly from the Greek, like *hepar*, etc., retain the Greek quantity in the increment.

4. *O* is short in the Increment of Neuter Nouns; as, *corpus*, *ōris*; and in *arbor*, *memor*, *bos*, *lepus*, *compos*, and *impos*.

III. In the singular Increment of Nouns, etc., *e*, *i*, and *u* are short; as, *hiems*, *ēmis*; *lapis*, *īdis*; *murmur*, *ūris*.

*Exceptions.*

1. In *e*. The following Nouns increase in *e* long: *halec*, *heres*, *locuples*, *mansues*, *merces*, *quies*, *plebs*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*.

(Many Greek Nouns, as *tapea*, *etis*, etc., have the *e* long, but they follow the Greek.)

2. In *i*. a. The Nouns *Dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, and *vibex* increase in *i* long.

b. All Adjectives in *ix* increase in *i* long, and all Nouns in *ix*, except monosyllables, as *nix*, *pix*, etc., and *calix*, *filix*, *larix*, *fornix*, *salix*, and *varix*.

3. In *u*. a. Words which make *udis*, *uris*, *utis*, in the Genitive from Nominatives in *us* have *u* long in the increase.

b. *Fur*, *lux* (*frux*). and *Pollux* also increase long.

IV. The inseparable prepositions *dī* and *se* are long; *re* is short.

NOTE.—*Rēfert* (where the *re* is from *res*) has the *e* long.

The Rules for Penults and Antepenults, and exceptions to other rules, will not be given here; the quantity must be learned from the Dictionary, and the rules reserved for a more advanced Grammar.

WORDS HAVING A DIFFERENT SIGNIFICATION IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>Aedes,</b> <i>a temple.</i>	<b>Aedes,</b> <i>a house.</i>
<b>Aqua,</b> <i>water.</i>	<b>Aquae,</b> <i>medicinal springs.</i>
<b>Auxilium,</b> <i>aid.</i>	<b>Auxilia,</b> <i>auxiliary forces.</i>
<b>Bonum,</b> <i>a good.</i>	<b>Bona,</b> <i>property, goods.</i>
<b>Carcer,</b> <i>a prison.</i>	<b>Carcēres,</b> <i>the barriers of a race-course.</i>
<b>Cera,</b> <i>wax.</i>	<b>Cerae,</b> <i>a (waxen) tablet.</i>
<b>Comitium,</b> <i>the Comitium (a part of the Roman Forum).</i>	<b>Comitia,</b> <i>an assembly for election.</i>
<b>Copia,</b> <i>plenty.</i>	<b>Copiae,</b> <i>forces.</i>
<b>Epulum,</b> <i>a sacred feast.</i>	<b>Epulae,</b> <i>dishes, a banquet.</i>
<b>Fācultas,</b> <i>power of doing, facility.</i>	<b>Fācultates,</b> <i>property.</i>
<b>Finis,</b> <i>end.</i>	<b>Fines,</b> <i>boundaries, territories.</i>
<b>Fortuna,</b> <i>fortune.</i>	<b>Fortunae,</b> <i>the gifts of fortune.</i>
<b>Gratia,</b> <i>favor.</i>	<b>Gratiae,</b> <i>thanks.</i>
<b>Hortus,</b> <i>a garden.</i>	<b>Horti,</b> <i>pleasure-grounds.</i>
<b>Littēra,</b> <i>a letter (of the Alphabet).</i>	<b>Litterae,</b> <i>an epistle, literature.</i>
<b>Ludus,</b> <i>play.</i>	<b>Ludi,</b> <i>public games.</i>
<b>Lustrum,</b> <i>a period of five years.</i>	<b>Lustra,</b> <i>haunts of wild beasts.</i>
<b>Marmor,</b> <i>marble.</i>	<b>Marmōra,</b> <i>marbles, statues.</i>
<b>Mos,</b> <i>a custom.</i>	<b>Mōres,</b> <i>manners, character.</i>
<b>Nātālis,</b> <i>a birthday.</i>	<b>Nātales,</b> <i>lineage.</i>
<b>Opera,</b> <i>work.</i>	<b>Operae,</b> <i>workmen.</i>
<b>(Ops),</b> <i>help.</i>	<b>Opes,</b> <i>resources, power.</i>
<b>Pars,</b> <i>a part.</i>	<b>Partes,</b> <i>the part (of an actor), a side or party.</i>
<b>Rostrum,</b> <i>a beak, bill.</i>	<b>Rostra,</b> <i>the rostra, raised stage for orators in the Roman Forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships).</i>
<b>Sal,</b> <i>salt.</i>	<b>Sāles,</b> <i>witticisms.</i>
<b>Tempus,</b> <i>time.</i>	<b>Tempōra,</b> <i>the temples of the head.</i>

## PRESENT-PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

## I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The Present-Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvi*, *ātum*: *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:

Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpītum,	crēpāre,	<i>to creak.</i>
Cūbo,	cūbui,	cūbītum,	cūbāre,	<i>to lie.</i>
Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmītum,	dōmāre,	<i>to tame.</i>
Sōno,	sōnui,	sōnītum,	sōnāre,	<i>to sound.</i>
Vēto,	vētui,	vētītum,	vētāre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
Mīco,	mīcui,	—	mīcāre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
Plico,	plēui,	{ plēctum, plēcātum,	{ plēcāre,	<i>to fold.</i>
Frīco,	frīcui,	frictum,	frīcāre,	<i>to rub.</i>
Sēco,	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,	<i>to cut.</i>
Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lāvātum, lautum,	{ lāvāre,	<i>to wash.</i>
Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

## II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Present-Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *uī* and *itum*; *as*, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:

1. Present-Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

Dōceo,	dēcui,	doctum,	dēcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
Misceo,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum,	{ miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	<i>to roast.</i>
Sorbeo,	{ sorbui, sorpsi,	{ —	sorbēre,	<i>to suck up.</i>
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	<i>to assess, think.</i>

2. Present-Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	delētum,	dēlēre,	<i>to blot out, destroy.</i>
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	<i>to weep.</i>
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	<i>to spin.</i>
{ Pleo only in composition.				
{ Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	<i>to fill up.</i>

Abŭleo,	ābŭlēvi,	ābŭlŭtum,	ābŭlĕre,	<i>to abolish.</i>
Adŭleo,	adolēvi,	adultum,	adolĕre,	<i>to increase.</i>

3. *Present-Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.*

Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandĕre,	<i>to breakfast.</i>
Sĕdeo,	sĕdi,	sessum,	sĕdĕre,	<i>to sit.</i>
Vĭdeo,	vĭdi,	vĭsum,	vĭdĕre,	<i>to see.</i>
Strideo.	strīdi,	———	strīdĕre,	<i>to creak.</i>

*With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.*

Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordĕre,	<i>to bite.</i>
Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	<i>to hang.</i>
Spondeo,	spŏpon-di,	sponsum,	spondĕre,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondĕre,	<i>to shear.</i>

4. *Present-Perfect—i (vi). Supine—sum.*

Cāveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	cāvĕre,	<i>to guard one's self.</i>
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	fāvĕre,	<i>to favor.</i>
Fŏveo,	fŏvi,	fŏtum,	fŏvĕre,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Mŏveo,	mŏvi,	mŏtum,	mŏvĕre,	<i>to move.</i>
Vŏveo,	vŏvi,	vŏtum,	vŏvĕre,	<i>to row.</i>

*Without Supine.*

Pāveo,	pāvi,	———	pāvĕre,	<i>to fear.</i>
Ferveo,	{ fervi,	{ ———	fervĕre,	<i>to boil.</i>
	{ ferbui,	{ ———		
Connīveo,	{ connīvi,	{ ———	connīvĕre,	<i>to wink.</i>
	{ connixi,	{ ———		

5. *Present-Perfect—i. Supine—tum and sum.*

Angeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augĕre,	<i>to increase.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgĕre,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquĕre,	<i>to twist.</i>
Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardĕre,	<i>to blaze.</i>
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerĕre,	<i>to stick.</i>
Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jūbĕre,	<i>to order.</i>
Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānĕre,	<i>to remain.</i>
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcĕre,	<i>to stroke.</i>
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgĕre,	<i>to milk.</i>
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdĕre,	<i>to laugh.</i>
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādĕre,	<i>to advise.</i>
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	<i>to wipe.</i>
Algeo,	alsi,	———	algĕre,	} <i>to be cold.</i>
Frīgeo,	frīxi,	———	frigĕre,	
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	———	fulgĕre,	<i>to shine.</i>
Lūceo,	luxi,	———	lūcĕre,	<i>to be light.</i>
Lūgeo,	luxi,	———	lūgĕre,	<i>to grieve.</i>
Turgeo,	(tursi),	———	turgĕre,	<i>to swell.</i>
Urgeo,	ursi,	———	urgĕre,	<i>to press.</i>

6. *The Neuter-Passives.*

Audeo,	ausus sum, ———	audēre,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gāvisus sum, ———	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	sōlītus sum, ———	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

## III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.*(a). *Present-Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—B becomes p before s and t.

Carpō,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	to pluck.
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbēre,	to peel.
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbēre,	to marry.
Rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpēre,	to creep.
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	to scratch.
Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	to write.
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpēre,	to crawl.

(b). *Present-Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or itum.*

{ Cumbo,				
{ Incumbo,	incūbui,	incūbūtum,	incumbēre,	to lie upon.
Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpītum,	strēpēre,	to make a noise.

(c). *Present-Perfect—I. Supine—tum, or wanting.*

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpēre,	to burst.
Bībo,	bībi,	———	bībēre,	to drink.
Lambo,	lambi,	———	lambēre,	to lick.
Scābo,	scābi,	———	scābēre,	to scratch.

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.*(a). *Present-Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—Cs and gs become x. G becomes c before t.

Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dicēre,	to say.
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcēre,	to lead.
Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquēre,	to cook.
Cingo,	cinxī,	cinctum,	cingēre,	to surround.
{ (Fligo) not used				to strike. [ground.
{ Affligo,	afflixī,	afflictum,	affligēre,	to strike to the
Frigo,	frixī,	{ frictum,	{ frigēre,	to parch, to fry.
		{ frixum,		
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungēre,	to join.
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingēre,	to lick.
{ (Mungo, not used.)				
{ Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungēre,	to blow the nose.

Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangere,	to beat.
Rogo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgere,	to direct, rule.
Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgere,	to suck.
Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tēgere,	to cover.
{ Tingo,	{ tinxi,	tinctum,	{ tingere,	{ to dip.
{ Tinguo,	{		{ tinguere,	{
{ Ungo,	{ unxi,	unctum,	{ ungere,	{ to anoint.
{ Unguo,	{		{ unguere,	{
(Stinguo, not used.)				
{ Exstinguo,	{ exstinxi,	extinctum,	exstinguere,	to extinguish.
Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhere,	to drag.
Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	vēhere,	to carry, to draw.
Ango,	anxi,	—	angere,	to vex.
Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningere,	to snow.
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figere,	to form, to invent.
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingere,	to paint.
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringere,	to grasp.

(b). *Present-Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.*

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergere,	to sink.
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargere,	to scatter.
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergere,	to wipe.
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figere,	to fix.
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectere,	to bend.
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectere,	to bind.
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectere,	to comb.
Plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectere,	to plait.

(c). *Present-Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.*

Pango,	pēpigi,	pactum,	pangere,	to fix.
Parco,	pēperci,	parsum,	parcere,	to spare.
Pungo,	pūptigi,	punctum,	pungere,	to prick.
Tango,	tētigi,	tactum,	tangere,	to touch.
Disco,	dīdici,	—	discere,	to learn.
Posco,	pōposci,	—	poscere,	to demand.

(d). *Present-Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).*

Āgo,	ēgi,	actum,	āgere,	to do.
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangere,	to break.
Īco,	īci,	ictum,	icere,	to strike (a treaty).
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgere,	to read.
Linquo,	liqui,	(lictum),	linquere,	to leave.
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincere,	to conquer.

(e). *Present-Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texere,	to weave.
-------	--------	---------	---------	-----------

(f). *Guttural Stem disguised.*

Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluere,	to flow.
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struere,	to pile up.
Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivere,	to live.

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a). *Present-Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *a*.

Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
Rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
Trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
{ Vado,	_____	_____	vadere,	to go.
{ Invado,	invasi,	invasum,	invadere,	to go against.
Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.

(b). *Present-Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cādo,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	cādēre,	<i>to fall.</i>
Caedo,	cēcīli,	caesum,	caedēre,	<i>to strike, to cut.</i>
Pendo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	<i>to hang, to weigh.</i>
Tendo,	tētendi,	{ tensum,	} tendēre,	<i>to stretch.</i>
		{ tentum,		
Tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum,	} tundēre,	<i>to beat.</i>
		{ tūsum,		
Do in compos.				<i>to put.</i>
Abdo,	abdīdi,	abdītum,	abdēre,	<i>to put away, to hide.</i>
Addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	addēre,	<i>to put to, to add.</i>
Condo,	condīdi,	condītum,	condēre,	<i>to put together, to build, conceal.</i>
Dēdo,	dēdīdi,	dēdītum,	dēdēre,	<i>to put down, to surrender.</i>
Edo,	ēdīdi,	ēdītum,	ēdēre,	<i>to put forth, to publish.</i>
Indo,	indīdi,	indītum,	indēre,	<i>to put on.</i>
Perdo,	perdīdi,	perdītum,	perdēre,	<i>to ruin, to lose.</i>
Prōdo,	prōdīdi,	prōdītum,	prōdēre,	<i>to betray.</i>
Reddo,	reddīdi,	reddītum,	reddēre,	<i>to put back, to restore.</i>
Subdo,	subdīdi,	subdītum,	subdēre,	<i>to put under, to substitute.</i>
Trādo,	trādīdi,	trādītum,	trādēre,	<i>to put across, to deliver.</i>
Crēdo,	crēdīdi,	crēdītum,	crēdēre,	<i>to believe.</i>
Vendo,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	vendēre,	<i>to sell.</i>
Sisto,	stīti,	stātum,	sistēre,	<i>to cause to stand.</i>

(c). *Present-Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendere,	to set on fire.
Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdere,	to hammer.
Ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdere,	to eat.



(Fendo, not used,				
Défendo,	défendi,	défensum,	défendère,	to strike.) to ward off, to defend.
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendère,	to strike against, to assault.
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundère,	to pour.
Incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendère,	to burn.
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandère,	to chew.
Pando,	pandi,	{ pansum or passum,	pandère,	to spread.
Préhendo,	préhendi,	préhensum,	préhendère,	to grasp.
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandère,	to climb.
{ Strido,	strīdi,	—	stridère,	to creak.
{ Strideo,	—	—	—	—
Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertère,	to turn.
Findo,	fīdi,	fissum,	findère,	to cleave.
Scindo,	scīdi,	scissum,	scindère,	to tear.
{ Frendo,	—	fressum,	frendère,	{ to gnash the teeth.
{ Frendeo,	—	frēsum,	—	

## (d). Other Forms.

Mēto,	messui,	messum,	mētère,	to mow.
Pēto,	{ pētīvi or pētī,	pētītum,	pētère,	to seek.
Sīdo,	{ sēdi (rarely) sīdi),	—	sīdère,	to sit down.
Sterto,	stertui,	—	stertère,	to snore.
Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdère,	to trust.

## 4. Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.

## (a). Present-Perfect—ul. Supine—ītum or tum.

Ālo,	ālui,	{ ālītum or altum,	ālère,	to nourish.
Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlère,	to till.
Consūlo,	consūlui,	consūltum,	consūlère,	to consult.
Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlītum,	mōlère,	to grind.
Occūlo,	occūlui,	occultum,	occūlère,	to conceal.
Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	to wish.
Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmère,	to roar.
Gēmō,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmère,	to groan.
Trēmō,	trēmui,	—	trēmère,	to tremble.
Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmère,	to vomit.
Gigno,	gēnui,	gēnītum,	gignère,	to produce.

## (b). Present-Perfect with Reduplication.

Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallère,	to deceive.
Pello,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	pellère,	to drive.
Cāno,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānère,	to sing.

(c). *Present-Perfect*—i. *Supine*—tum.

Cómo,	compai,	comptum,	cómère,	to adorn.
Dómo,	dempai,	demptum,	démère,	to take away.
Prómo,	prompai,	promptum,	prómère,	to take forth.
Sómo,	sumpai,	sumptum,	súmère,	to take up.
Temno,	tempai,	temptum,	temnère,	to despise.

(d). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percellère,	to strike down.
Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallère,	to play on a stringed instrument.
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellère,	to pluck.
Tollo,	sustūli,	sublātum,	tollère,	to raise up.
Ēmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ēmère,	to take or buy.
Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmère,	to press.
Līno,	lēvi,	litum,	linère,	to smear.
Sīno,	sīvi,	sītum,	sīnère,	to permit.

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in R.*

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernère,	to sift, to divide.
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernère,	to despise.
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternère,	to strew.
Gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	gērère,	to carry.
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrère,	to burn.
Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	currère,	to run.
Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	ferre,	to bear, carry.
Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerère,	to seek.
Sēro,	sēruī,	sertum,	sērère,	to put in rows, to plait.
Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sērère,	to sow.
Tēro,	trīvi,	tritum,	tērère,	to rub.
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrère,	to sweep.

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsère,	to knead.
Pinso,	{ pinsui,	pinsītum,	pinsère,	} to pound.
	{ pinsi,	pinsum,		
Piso,	—	pistum,	pisère,	to pound.
Viso,	vīsi,	—	visère,	to visit.
Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsītum,	pōnère,	to place.
Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessère,	to send for.
Cāpresso,	cāpessīvi,	cāpessītum,	cāpessère,	to take in hand.
Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessītum,	fācessère,	to make, to cause.
Lācesso,	lācessīvi,	lācessītum,	lācessère,	to provoke.

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.**Present-Perfect*—i. *Supins*—tum.

Ācuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācuère,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguère,	to prove.

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuere,	to soak.
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induere,	to put on.
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuere,	to put off.
Mīnuo,	mīnui,	mīnūtum,	mīnuere,	to lessen.
Rūo,	rui,	rūtum,	ruere,	to rush.
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuere,	to spit.
Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuere,	to set up.
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suere,	to sew.
Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuere,	to distribute.
Lāvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lāvere,	to wash.
		lōtum,		
Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruere,	to agree.
Luo,	lui,	—	luere,	to atone.
{(Nuo,				to nod.)
{Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuere,	to refuse.
{Annuo,	annui,	—	annuere,	to assent.
Mētuo,	mētui,	—	mētuere,	to fear.
Pluit,	pluit or	—	pluere,	to rain.
	pluivit,			
Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuere,	to sneeze.

### 8. Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in **sco**.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action.

Ābōlesco,	ābōlēvi,	ābōlītum,	ābōlescere,	to grow out of use.
Adōlesco,	ādōlēvi,	ādultum,	ādōlescere,	to grow up.
Exōlesco,	exōlēvi,	exōlītum,	exōlescere,	to grow old.
Cōālesco,	cōālui,	cōālītum,	cōālescere,	to grow together.
(ālo)				
Concūpisco,	concūpivi,	concūpītum,	concūpiscere,	to desire.
(cūpio)				
Convālesco,	convālui,	convālītum,	convālescere,	to grow strong.
(vāleo)				
Exardesco,	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescere,	to take fire.
(ardeo)				
Invētērasco,	invētērāvi,	invētērātum,	invētērascere,	to grow old.
(invētēro)				
Consēnesco,	consēnui,	—	consēnescere,	to grow old.
(sēnex)				
Ingrāvesco,	—	—	ingrāvescere,	to grow heavy.
(grāvis)				
Jūvēnesco,	—	—	jūvēnescere,	to grow young.
(jūvēnis)				
Mātūresco,	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescere,	to grow ripe.
(mātūrus)				
Obmūtesco,	obmūtui,	—	obmūtescere,	to grow dumb.
(mūtus)				

The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:

Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescere,	to grow.
Glisco,	_____	_____	gliscere,	to swell.
Hisco,	_____	_____	hiscere,	to gape.
Nosco,	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscere,	to learn, to know.
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascere,	to feed.
Quiesco,	quīēvi,	quīētum,	quiescere,	to become quiet.
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescere,	to grow accustomed.

#### IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Present-Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*; as, *audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, to hear*. The following are exceptions:

Farcio,	farsi,	fartum, (farctum)	farcīre,	to cram.
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	to prop.
Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	to draw (water).
Sancio,	sanxi,	sancitum or sanctum,	sancīre,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	to patch.
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	to feel, to think.
Saepio,	saepi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	to fence in.
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	to bind.
Eo,	īvi,	ītum,	īre,	to go.
Sālio,	sālui or sālī,	saltum,	sālīre,	to leap.
Sēpelio,	sēpēlīvi,	sēpultum,	sēpēlīre,	to bury.
Vēnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vēnīre,	to come.
Amicio,	amīcui or amixi,	amictum,	amīcīre,	to clothe.
Āpērio,	āpērui,	āpertum,	āpērīre,	to open.
Ōpērio,	ōpērui,	ōpertum,	ōpērīre,	to cover.

#### V. THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH.

Cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpēre,	to take.
Fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	fācēre,	to make.
Jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācēre,	to throw.
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	fūgēre,	to flee.
Fōdio,	fōdī,	fossū,	fōdēre,	to dig.
Rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpēre,	to seize.
Pārio,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārēre,	to bring forth.
Quātio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quātēre,	to shake.
Cūpio,	cūpīvi,	cūpitum,	cūpēre,	to desire.
Sāpio,	sāpīvi,		sāpēre,	to taste.
Lācio,			lācēre,	to draw
Spēcio,			spēcēre,	to look

} rare, except in  
composition.

## VI. DEPONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

## 2. Second Conjugation :

Fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	<i>to confess.</i>
Līceor,	licitus sum,	licēri,	<i>to bid at a sale.</i>
Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	<i>to heal.</i>
Mēreor,	mēritus sum,	mērēri,	<i>to earn, to deserve.</i>
Misēreor,	misēritus sum or misertus sum,	misērēri,	<i>to take pity on.</i>
Polliceor,	pollicitus sum,	pollicēri,	<i>to promise.</i>
Reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	<i>to think.</i>
Tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuērī,	<i>to protect.</i>
Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērērī,	<i>to fear.</i>

## 3. Third Conjugation :

Fruor,	fructus sum or fructus sum,	frui,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	<i>to perform.</i>
Grādiōr,	gressus sum,	grādi,	<i>to step.</i>
Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	<i>to slip.</i>
Liquor,	—	liqui,	<i>to melt.</i>
Lōquor,	locūtus sum,	lōqui,	<i>to speak.</i>
Mōriōr,	mortuus sum,	mōri,	<i>to die.</i>
Nītor,	nixus sum or nīsus sum,	nīti,	<i>to strain.</i>
Pātiōr,	passus sum,	pāti,	<i>to suffer.</i>
Quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	<i>to complain.</i>
Ringor,	—	ringi,	<i>to show the teeth, to snarl.</i>
Sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēqui,	<i>to follow.</i>
Ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	<i>to use.</i>
{(Verbo)			
{Rēvertor,	(rēversus sum),	rēverti,	<i>to return.</i>
{(Plecto)			
{Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	<i>to embrace.</i>
{Complector,	complexus sum,	complexi,	<i>to embrace.</i>
{Apiscor,	aptus sum,	āpisci,	<i>to obtain.</i>
{Adīpiscor,	ādeptus sum,	ādīpisci,	<i>to obtain.</i>
{Commīniscor,	commentus sum,	commīnisci,	<i>to devise.</i>
{Rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	<i>to remember.</i>
{Dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	<i>to grow weary.</i>
{Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	<i>to wake up.</i>
{Irascor,	īratus sum,	īrasci,	<i>to be angry.</i>
{Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	<i>to obtain by chance.</i>
{Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	<i>to be born.</i>
{Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblivisci,	<i>to forget.</i>
{Pāciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	<i>to make an agreement</i>

Prōficiscor,	prōfectus sum,	prōficisci,	<i>to set out.</i>
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	<i>to avenge.</i>
Vescor,		vesci,	<i>to eat.</i>

## 4. Fourth Conjugation :

Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	<i>to agree to.</i>
Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	<i>to flatter.</i>
Expērior,	expertus sum,	expērīri,	<i>to try.</i>
Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	<i>to give bountifully.</i>
Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	<i>to lie.</i>
Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	<i>to measure.</i>
Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	<i>to labor.</i>
Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum, oppērītus sum, }	oppērīri,	<i>to wait for.</i>
Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	<i>to begin.</i>
Orior,	ortus sum,	ōrīri,	<i>to rise.</i>
Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	<i>to divide.</i>
Pōtior,	pōtītus sum,	pōtīri,	<i>to obtain possession of</i>
Sortior.	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	<i>to take by lot.</i>

# INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

## LATIN WORDS.

*N.B.—The figures refer to the Vocabularies in which the words occur, excepting where p. (page) is prefixed.*

AB.	APOLLO.	AVERSUS.	CAPUT.
Ab (a, abs), 25 (b).	Aeschines, 52.	Apollonia, 53.	averto, 69.
abdo, 68.	aestas, 38.	appello, 63.	avis, 26.
abeo, p. 106.	aetas, 50.	apud, 56.	avus, 3.
abjicio, 58.	aeternus, 24.	aquila, 1.	Babylon, 53.
abstineo, 71.	affectus, 62.	Aquitani, 63.	balaena, 12.
absum, p. 89.	affero, p. 104.	Aquitania, 64.	beate, 59.
absumo, 37.	affinitas, 70.	aquor, 58.	beatus, 20.
absurdus, 53.	affligo, 32.	Arar, 69.	Belgae, 63.
abutor, 36.	Africanus, 32.	Arbela, 50.	bellicosus, 6.
ac, 63.	ager, 4.	arbitror, 66.	bello, 58.
accedo, 41.	Agessilaus, 58.	arbor, 16.	bellua, 24.
acceptus, 65.	agger, 9.	arcus, 14.	bellum, 5.
accido, 57.	aggredior, 68.	arcus coelestis, 14.	bene, 26.
accipio, 35.	agmen, 69.	ardeo, 59.	benevolus, 55.
accurvo, 71.	ago, 41.	arduus, 61.	benigne, 36.
accuso, 70.	agricola, 3.	argentum, 5.	benignus, 7.
acer, 13.	ala, 1.	Arviolatus, 48.	bestia, 16.
acies, 15.	albus, 6.	Aristides, 53.	bestiola, 51.
acriter, 73.	Alcibiades, 52.	arma, 13.	bibo, 47.
acuo, 59.	Alexander, 19.	Arpinum, 53.	Bibracte, 72.
acus, 14.	alienus, 69.	ars, 26.	Bibulus, 57.
acutus, 6.	aliquando, 36.	arx, 7.	biduum, 72.
ad, 36.	aliqua, 47.	Asia, 35.	bipartito, 73.
addictus, 24.	alius, p. 29.	asper, 13.	Blaesus, 56.
addisco, 47.	Allobroges, 66.	asperior, 34.	blandior, 37.
adductus, 65.	alloquor, 36.	ater, 11.	Boii, 72.
adeo, p. 106.	alo, 59.	Athenae, 51.	bona (pl.), 33; p. 157.
adhibeo, 60, 71.	Alpes, 28.	Atheniensis, 26.	bonitas, 73.
adhortor, 36.	alter, 10.	atque, 41.	bonum (subs.), 55.
adipiscor, 36.	altus, 6.	atrox, 45.	bonus, 6.
adjuvo, 46.	amabilis, 18.	attente, 41.	brevis, 13.
admiror, 34.	Ambarrî, 67.	attentus, 20.	Britannia, 2.
admitto, 71.	ambulo, 25 (a).	attingo, 64.	Brutus, 62.
adscendo, 71.	amicitia, 2.	auctoritas, 21.	Cado, 82.
adscensus, 71.	amicus, 3.	auctumnus, 3.	caecus, 54.
adsum, p. 39.	amitto, 73.	audacia, 70.	Caesar, 26.
adulatio, 18.	amor, 18.	audacter, 41.	Caius (C.), 52.
advenio, 54.	amplius, 69.	audax, 13.	calamitas, 63.
advento, 5 (b).	anceps, 73.	audeo, p. 108.	calcar, 12.
adventus, 30.	Anchises, 17.	audio, p. 54.	calor, 9.
adversus, um, p. 92.	angustiae, 67.	auditus, 14.	Camillus, 27.
aedificium, 25 (a).	angustus, 11.	aufero, p. 104.	Campania, 62.
aedifico, 25 (a).	animadverto, 54, 71.	augeo, 70.	campus, 51.
Aedul, 58.	animal, 12.	Augustus, 19.	oanis, 16.
Aedua, 65.	animus, 21.	aureus, 12.	Cannae, 53.
aeger, 6.	annus, 12.	auris, 14.	canto, 25 (l).
Aegyptus, 41.	ante, 65, p. 68.	aurum, 5.	cantus, 26.
Aeneas, 17.	antepono, 50.	aut, 69.	Canusium, 52.
aequus, 42.	Antiochus, 29.	autem, 23.	capio, 64.
aer, 32.	antiquus, 55.	auxilium, 21.	Capua, 52.
aerumna, 44.	Apollo, 43.	aversus, 78.	caput, 12.

# 170 INDEX TO VOCABULARIES.—LATIN WORDS.

CARMEN.	COPIAE.	DESUM.	ESICIO.
carmen, 18.	colloquor, 5.	copiosus, 72.	detego, 27.
caro, 36.	colo, 31.	cor, 24.	deterreo, 57.
carus, 65.	colonia, 1.	coram, p. 93.	Deus, 5, p. 26.
Carthaginiensis, 47.	color, 9.	Corinthus, 25 (.)	dextra, 71.
Carthago, 12.	columba, 1.	Cornelia, 23.	Diana, 54.
carus, 20.	comes, 8.	cornu, 14.	dico, 27.
casus, 36.	comitor, 41.	corona, 1.	dies, 15.
Cassianus, 63.	commeat, 60.	corpus, 12.	differo, 63.
Cassius, 62.	commemoro, 69.	corrigo, 27.	difficilis, 13.
Cassivelaunus, 50.	commilito, 60.	creator, 15.	diffido, 57.
Casticus, 65.	committo, 36.	credibilia, 54.	diligens, 20.
castigo, 25 (a).	c. m. mode, 72.	credo, 55.	diligenter, 25 (a).
castra, 9.	commonefacio, 71.	cremo, 65.	diligentia, 5.
casus, 46.	commoveo, 68.	creo, 25 (.)	diligentissime, 28.
Catiline, 27.	comparo, 57.	Creta, 52.	diligio, 31.
Cato, 13.	complures, 70.	Croesus, 56.	dimico, 25 (.)
causa, 9.	comporto, 70.	cruciat, 36.	diminuo, 70.
cautus, 27.	comprehendo, 53.	crudelis, 28.	dimitto, 57.
cedo, 52.	concedo, 62.	crus, 12.	Dionysius, 53.
celer, 13.	concido, 68.	culpa, 17.	diripio, 55.
celeriter, 70.	concilium, 70.	cum, p. 93.	discedo, 63.
celsus, 31.	conduco, 65.	Cumae, 53.	discipulus, 5.
Celtae, 63.	confertus, 73.	cunctus, 43.	disco, 27.
centum, 73.	confero, 52.	cupiditas, 21.	disjicio, 72.
centuria, 19.	conficio, 50, 73.	cupidus, 70.	displaceo, 36.
cerasus, 19.	conficio, 57.	eupio, p. 85.	disimilis, 49.
cerasus, 13.	confirmo, 65.	cur, 42.	distinguo, 72.
cerno, 57.	confiteor, 35.	curo, 25 (a).	diu, 26.
certior, 67.	confugio, 54.	curro, 47.	diutius, 70.
certus, 10.	conjunctio, 56.	currus, 17.	dives, 20.
cervus, 14.	conjuratio, 27.	cursus, 14.	Divico, 68.
ceteri, 39.	Conon, 53.	custodio, 28.	divido, 59.
Chaerephon, 56.	conor, 34.	custos, 8.	divinus, 26.
cibaria, 66.	consanguineus, 67.	Cyprus, 53.	Divitiacus, 53.
Cicero, 12.	conscondo, 50.	Damno, 65.	divitiae, 14.
Cimbri, 24.	conscientia, 10.	Darius, 35.	do, 25 (.)
cingo, 27.	conscribo, 67.	de, p. 93.	doceo, 26.
circa, circum, circui-	consentio, 55.	dea, 10.	doctus, 10.
ter, p. 92.	consequor, 68.	debeo, 26.	dolor, 28.
circuitus, 71.	conservo, 47.	debilis, 16.	dolus, 63.
circumvento, 72.	Considius, 71.	decem, 73.	domicilium, 12.
cia, citra, p. 92.	consido, 71.	decet, p. 109.	domina, 15.
civilis, 37.	consilium, 46.	decipio, 35.	dominatus, 51.
civis, 11.	consisto, 68.	decus, 12.	dominus, 3.
civitas, 17.	conspicor, 72.	dedecet, p. 102.	domus, 66, p. 26.
clades, 11.	constat, 54.	deditio, 73.	donum, 5.
clam, p. 94.	constituo, 51.	defendo, 27.	dormio, 28.
clamor, 9.	consuesco, 62.	defessus, 72.	dubitatio, 67.
clarus, 8.	consuetudo, 10.	deflagro, 33.	dubito, 25 (b).
classis, 11.	consul, 19.	deinde, 72.	dubius, 25 (b).
claudio, 72.	consulatus, 33.	deleo, 26.	duco, 27, 70.
clens, 65.	consulo, 53.	delecto, 25 (.)	fulcis, 13.
coelestis, 14.	consumo, 53.	delectus, 50.	dum, 25 (a).
coelum, 5.	contemno, 27.	deligo, 65.	Dumnorix, 65.
coëmo, 65.	contemplor, 34.	Delos, 54.	duo, 66.
coeno, p. 108.	contendo, 51.	Delphi, 53.	duodeviginti, 72.
coëo, p. 106.	contenus, 20.	Demothenes, 21.	dux, 11.
coepi, 69.	continenter, 63.	demum, 34.	dux, 7.
coerco, 26.	contineo, 51, 64.	denique, 71.	Dyrachium, 53.
cogito, 50.	contra, p. 92.	deploro, 43.	E, ex, p. 93.
cognitio, 34.	contraho, 27.	deporto, 69.	edo, 59.
cognosco, 50.	contumelia, 69.	depopulo, 67.	edifico, 29.
cogno, 65.	convenio, 53.	deprecator, 67.	edifico, 29.
cohors, 19.	convertio, 72.	desero, 27.	effero, p. 104.
cohortor, 57.	convoco, 50.	designo, 70.	effloresco, 50.
colligo, 72.	copia, 27, 73.	despero, 70.	egregius, 29.
collis, 71.	copiae, 27.	desum, p. 30.	ejicio, 35.



ELEGANS.	GENO.	IMPETUS.	INTRO.
elegans, 24.	fero, 27.	gladius, 3.	impransus, 57.
elephantus, 12.	fero, p. 102.	gloria, 2.	improbus, 18.
eloquens, 55.	ferox, 49.	graviter, 58.	imprudentia, 54.
emendo, 15 (n).	ferrum, 18.	Gracchus, 32.	in, 27.
emigro, 25 (a).	ficus, 14.	gracilis, p. 31.	incendium, 27.
emo, 27.	fidelis, 13.	Græcia, 2.	incendo, 27.
enarro, 57.	fides, 15.	Gramus, 17.	incertus, 56.
enitor, 57.	fido, p. 108.	gramen, 16.	incipio, 41.
enuncio, 65.	fidus, 24.	grandinæ, p. 110.	incito, 66.
eo, 63.	fila, 1.	gratia, 59.	incola, 2.
eo (adv.), 72.	filius, 3.	gratulus, 73.	incolo, 63.
Epaminondas, 37.	fingo, 31.	gratus, 6.	incommodum, 63.
eques, 8.	finit, 28.	gravis, 46.	incredibilis, 63.
equitatus, 14.	finit, 28.	graviter, 39.	incuso, 56.
equus, 3.	fio, p. 79.	gusto, 58.	inde, 67.
ergo, p. 92.	firmitas, 25 (a).	habeo, 36.	Indi, 49.
eripio, 65.	firmus, 7.	habito, 25 (c).	indoctus, 17.
erro, 25 (c).	flagito, 69.	Hannibal, 25 (l).	indulgentia, 43.
erudio, 28.	flecto, 72.	Hanno, 51.	industrius, 21.
cruditus, 32.	fleo, 26.	Hasdrubal, 41.	inco, p. 106.
et, 3.	fio, 25 (a).	hasta, 6.	inera, 21.
etiam, 28.	florens, 51.	haud, 53.	infamia, 43.
Euripides, 26.	floreo, 26.	Hellespontus, 27.	infamia, 56.
Europa, 2.	fior, 9.	Helvetia, 18.	infectus, 46.
evello, 72.	flumen, 16.	Helvetii, 39.	inferior, 49.
evenio, 53.	fluo, 33.	heri, 25 (l).	infero, p. 104.
ex, p. 93.	fluvius, 3.	Helvetius, 39.	infinitus, 10.
excedo, 41.	fodio, p. 55.	hiberna, 67.	infirmus, 57.
excipio, 73.	fons, 24.	hibernus, 13.	infirmus, 50.
exclamo, 57.	forte, 49.	hic, 63.	infectio, 72.
excolo, 27.	fortis, 16.	hiemo, 53.	influo, 63.
exemplum, 6.	fortissime, 25 (b).	hiems, 7.	infra, p. 92.
exeo, p. 106.	fortiter, 25 (l).	hilaris, 45.	infringo, 42.
exerceo, 16.	fortuna, 37.	Hispania, 64.	ingeni, 13.
exercitus, 14.	forum, 57.	Homerus, 54.	ingredior, 60.
exhilaro, 25 (l).	fossa, 9.	homo, 10.	inimicitia, 2.
exilium, 52.	frango, 72.	honor, 17.	inimicus, 17.
existimatio, 71.	frater, 9.	hora, 51.	initium, 13.
existimo, 71.	fraternus, 71.	hortor, 34.	injuria, 69.
expeditus, 66.	fraus, 25 (a).	Horatius, 53.	injuste, 32.
expello, 53.	frigus, 12.	hortus, 3.	injustus, 56.
exporior, 37.	frons, 57.	hostia, 43.	innumerus, 27.
explorator, 71.	fructus, 14.	hostis, 11.	inopia, 73.
expono, 51.	fruges, 44.	humanus, 13.	inops, 44.
expugno, 25 (2).	frumentarius, 72.	humilis, p. 31.	insequor, 72.
exsequor, 36.	frumentum, 69.	ibi, 52.	insigne, 71.
expecto, 67.	frunor, 36.	ictus, 73.	instituto, 27.
extra, p. 92.	fuga, 67.	idem, 65.	institutum, 63.
extremus, 64.	fugio, p. 85.	ignavia, 20.	insto, 70.
extruo, 50.	fugo, 29.	igneus, 55.	instrumentum, 14.
Fabius, 58.	fulgeo, 40.	ignis, 65.	instruo, 27.
Fabricius, 53.	fulgur, 12.	ignoratio, 49.	insula, 1.
fabula, 31.	fungor, 36.	ilium, p. 28.	insum, p. 39.
facies, 15.	funus, 16.	ille, 43.	intelligo, 55.
facile, 45.	furor, 13.	imago, 18.	inter, p. 92.
facilis, 13.	Galli, 63.	imitor, 35.	intercludo, 60, 72.
facinus, 75.	Gallia, 2.	immolo, 43.	intereo, p. 106.
facio, p. 85.	Gallicus, 71.	immortalis, 16.	interficio, 47.
fallo, p. 163.	Garumna, 63.	immortalitas, 36.	interim, 69.
fames, 45.	gaudeo, p. 108.	impedimentum, 72.	interitus, 25 (b).
familia, 65.	gaudium, 5.	impedio, 68.	intermitto, 73.
familiaris, 70.	gener, 4.	imperator, 27.	intersum, p. 39.
fateor, 35.	Geneva, 66.	imperitus, 57.	intervallum, 71.
faveo, 70.	genu, 14.	imperium, 40.	intra, p. 92.
felicitas, 56.	genus, 12.	impero, 25 (b).	intro, 25 (c).
felix, 13.	Germani, 39.	impetro, 67.	intreo, 79.
femina, 1.	gero, 36.	impetue, 42.	intueor, 35.

# 172 INDEX TO VOCABULARIES.—LATIN WORDS.

## INTUMESCO.

Intumescō, 49.  
invidia, 42.  
inivitus, 67.  
ipse, 69.  
ira, 13.  
irascor, 48.  
is, 64.  
istuc, 60.  
ita, 25 (v).  
Italia, 2.  
Itaque, 67.  
item, 65.  
iter, 18.  
Jaceo, 53.  
jacio, p. 85.  
jacto, 70.  
jam, 25 (v).  
jubeo, 86.  
jucundus, 7.  
judex, 7.  
judicium, 61.  
judico, 25 (a).  
jugum, 68.  
jumentum, 65.  
jungo, 27.  
Juno, 10.  
Jura, 64.  
juro, p. 108.  
jus, 20.  
jus-jurandum, p. 26.  
juste, 32.  
justitia, 71.  
justus, 7.  
juvenis, 59.  
juventus, 41.  
juvo, 73.  
juxta, p. 92.  
Labienus, 36.  
labor (nuda.), 9.  
lābor (v.), 53.  
lac, 36.  
Lacedaemon, 52.  
Lacedaemonii, 58.  
laceo, 69.  
lacio, p. 85.  
lacrima, 71.  
lacus, 36.  
Laeca, 56.  
laetitia, 36.  
laetus, 20.  
lapideus, 32.  
lapis, 32.  
late, 41.  
Latinus, 26.  
Latona, 64.  
latro, 57.  
lātus (adj.), 6.  
lando, 25 (v).  
laus, 17.  
legatio, 65.  
legatus, 83.  
legio, 19.  
lego, 27.  
Lemanus, 64.  
lenitas, 68.  
leo, 10.  
Leonidas, 52.

## MARINUS.

lepus, 18.  
Lesbos, 58.  
levis, 13.  
lex, 7.  
liber (nuda.), 4.  
liber (adj.), p. 21.  
liberalitas, 70.  
libère, 59.  
liberi, 23.  
libero, 25 (l).  
libet, p. 103.  
Libya, 23.  
liceor, 70.  
licet, p. 109.  
lictor, 28.  
Lingones, 73.  
lingua, 26.  
linter, 68.  
liquet, p. 109.  
I. lucus, 70.  
littera, 25 (r).  
litterae, 25 (a).  
litus, 12.  
Livius, 24.  
locus, 27.  
longe, 41.  
longinquitas, 28.  
longinquus, 28.  
longius, 58.  
longus, 6.  
loquor, 36.  
Luceria, 52.  
lucescit, p. 110.  
Lucius, 52.  
Lucretius, 55.  
ludi, 53.  
ludo, 43.  
ludus, 57.  
luna, 18.  
luscina, 24.  
lux, 18.  
Lycurgus, 20.  
Macedo, 19.  
magis, p. 106.  
magister, 4.  
magistratus, 14, 70.  
magnificus, 14.  
magnopere, 57.  
magnus, 6.  
maiores, 25 (l).  
male, p. 96.  
maleficium, 67.  
malevolus, 55.  
malo, p. 99.  
mālum, 19.  
mālum, 49.  
mālus, 19.  
mālus (adj.), 6.  
mandatum, 52.  
maneo, 80.  
manifestus, 54.  
manipulus, 19.  
manus, 14.  
Marathon, 51.  
mare, 12.  
margarita, 33.  
marinus, 50.

## MUNIO.

Marius, 53.  
marmor, 40.  
mater, 9.  
matrimonium, 67.  
Matrona, 63.  
maturo, 66.  
maturus, 69.  
maxime, 65.  
maximus, p. 81.  
Maximus, 58.  
meditor, 34.  
medius, 72.  
membrana, 28.  
memor, 20.  
memorabilis, 17.  
memoria, 21.  
Menapii, 86.  
mendax, 56.  
mens, 27.  
mensis, 19.  
mentior, 37.  
mereo, 26.  
metallum, 5.  
metior, 37.  
metuo, 43.  
metus, 38.  
mens, 18.  
migro, 39.  
miles, 8.  
mille, 69.  
Minerva, 10.  
minime, 48.  
minister, 4.  
minor, p. 31.  
minus, 69.  
miror, 34.  
mirus, 57.  
miser, 6.  
misereor, 35.  
miseret, p. 109.  
mitis, 19.  
mitto, 48.  
modo, 69.  
modus, 57.  
moenia, 57.  
molestus, 6.  
mollio, 28.  
molliis, 28.  
mole, 66.  
moneo, 26.  
mons, 18.  
monumentum, 16.  
morbus, 5.  
morior, 36.  
mors, 8.  
mortalis, 16.  
mortuus, 23.  
mos, 25 (v).  
moveo, 80.  
mox, 86.  
muller, 24.  
multitudo, 10.  
multo, 66.  
multus, 6.  
mundus, 27.  
munimentum, 9.  
munio, 28.

## OBEO.

munus, 36.  
murus, 5.  
muto, 25 (a).  
Nam, 68.  
narro, 27.  
nascor, 36.  
natura, 8.  
natus, 51.  
nauta, 2.  
navalis, 47.  
navis, 13.  
ne, p. 130.  
nec, 48.  
necessarius, 33.  
nefas, 58.  
nego, 54.  
negotium, 32.  
nemo, 25 (a).  
Neptunus, 16.  
nequam, p. 81.  
neque, 71.  
nequeo, 46.  
Nero, 30.  
Nervii, 57.  
nescio, 23.  
neuter, p. 29.  
neve, 36.  
nidus, 33.  
niger, 6.  
nihil, 13.  
nihilominus, 60.  
Nilus, 47.  
nimis, 36.  
ningit, p. 110.  
nisi, 54.  
nitro, 57.  
nix, 11.  
nobilis, 43.  
nobilitas, 54.  
noceo, 26.  
nolo, p. 99.  
nomen, 12.  
nominatim, 73.  
non, 24.  
nondum, 68.  
nonnullus, 47.  
nonnunquam, 62.  
nosco, p. 106.  
noster, 20.  
notus, 11.  
novissimus, 69.  
novus, 12.  
nox, 8.  
noxius, 6.  
nubes, 11.  
nullus, p. 29.  
num, 69.  
numero, 56.  
numerus, 6.  
nunc, 20.  
nuncio, 66.  
nunquam, 37.  
nutrio, 28.  
Ob, p. 92.  
obaeeratus, 65.  
obedio, 28.  
obeo, p. 106.

OBJICIO.	PORTA.	PROGREDIOR.	RAPAT.
objicio, 73.	paucus, 16.	pollicor, 35.	prohibeo, 57.
obliviscor, 36.	pauper, 29.	Pompilius, 26.	projicio, 73.
obscurus, 42.	paupertas, 44.	pone, p. 93.	prope, p. 93.
obsecro, 71.	pavo, 10.	pono, 51.	propinquus, p. 96.
obsevo, 61.	pax, 7.	pono, 27.	propono, 70.
obses, 8.	pecunia, 1.	populus, 67.	propter, p. 93.
obsideo, 51.	pedes, 8.	populus, 63.	propterea, 63.
obsidio, 27.	peditatus, 14.	porta, 1.	prospicio, 73.
obsto, 57.	pellis, 32.	porto, 25 (b).	prosum, p. 40.
obsum, p. 40.	penes, p. 92.	portus, 14.	provideo, 61.
obtempero, 60.	per, 36.	posco, 78.	provincia, 64.
obtineo, 70.	percipio, 62.	possessio, 67.	proximus, 49.
occasus, 64.	perdo, 41.	possum, p. 97.	prudens, 13.
occidens, 83.	perduco, 67.	post, p. 93.	prudentia, 44.
occido, 45.	perero, p. 106.	posterus, 69.	prunum, 19.
occupatus, 62.	perfectus, 49.	postquam, 72.	prunus, 19.
occupo, 25 ( ).	perfero, p. 104.	postulatio, 72.	publice, 61.
oceanus, 39.	perfringo, 72.	postulo, 63.	publicus, 53.
octo, 71.	perfructio, 73.	potens, 13.	pudet, p. 109.
oculus, 12.	Pericles, p. 29.	potentia, 34.	puella, 1.
odi, 70.	periculum, 6.	potestas, 34.	puer, 4.
odium, 18.	peritus, 11.	potior, 37.	pugna, 2.
odor, 9.	perlego, 50.	prae, p. 93.	pugno, 25 ( ).
offendo, 71.	permulto, 38.	praealtus, 57.	pulcher, 6.
offero, p. 104.	periculosus, 18.	praebeo, 26.	punicus, 32.
ominus, 66.	perpetuus, 52.	praecedo, 63.	punio, 23.
omnis, 13.	perrumpo, 53.	praecceptor, 20.	puto, 54.
onus, 44.	Persa, 13.	praecceptum, 26.	Pyrenaei, 64.
opera, 59.	persequor, 63.	praecipio, 71.	Pythagoras, 43.
oportet, p. 102.	persevero, 63.	praeda, 2.	Quaero, 56.
oppidum, 5.	persolvo, 63.	praeco, p. 106.	quaestio, 56.
oppono, 52.	persuadeo, 57.	praefero, p. 104.	qualis, 53.
opprimo, 57.	perterreo, 71.	praemitto, 50.	quam, 18, 65.
oppugno, 25 (a).	peritineo, 64.	praemium, 5.	quandiu, 70.
opto, 25 (b).	pervenio, 52.	praesens, 13.	quantus, 56.
opulentus, 25 (r).	perversus, 31.	praesentia, 67.	quare, 56.
opus, 12.	pes, 73.	praesertim, 70.	quartus, 68.
opus (indec.), 53.	peto, 52.	praestabilia, 47.	quasi, 62.
ora, 1.	Phaethon, 31.	praestans, 13.	quatio, p. 85.
oraculum, 45.	phalanx, 73.	praesum, p. 47.	quatuor, 63.
oratio, 27.	Phidias, 47.	praeter, p. 93.	que, 65.
orator, 10.	philosophus, 56.	praetereo, p. 106.	quercus, 14.
ordior, 37.	piger, p. 109.	praeteritus, 35.	qui, 63.
Orgetorix, 64.	pilum, 72.	praevenio, 57.	quia, 26.
orior, 50.	pingo, 27.	preces, 71.	quidam, 34.
orno, 25 (a).	pirum, 19.	premo, 57.	quidem, 31.
oro, 43.	pirus, 13.	prendo, 71.	quin, p. 130.
os, oris, 12.	piscia, 12.	pretium, 70.	quindecim, 69.
os, ossis, 19.	Pisistratus, 53.	primarius, 55.	quintetiam, 70.
ostendo, 71.	placeo, 26.	primo, 38.	quingenti, 71.
Pabulor, 58.	placet, p. 107.	primus, 67.	quini, 67.
pabulum, 69.	placidus, 25 (a).	princeps, 63.	quis, p. 45.
pagus, 68.	plane, 56.	pristinus, 36.	quisnam, 53.
pallium, 27.	plantiles, 15.	prus, 32.	quisquam, 71.
paratus, 60.	pluit, p. 110.	p. iusquam, 71.	quisque, 60.
parens, 23.	Plato, 51.	privatus, 66.	quo (adv.), 60.
pareo, 26.	plebs, 65.	pro, p. 93.	quo (conj.), p. 130.
pario, 54.	plenus, 16.	probe, 31.	quod, 26.
paro, 25 (r).	Plinius, 35.	probitas, 25 (r).	quominus, p. 130.
pars, 19.	pluit, p. 110.	probus, 20.	quondam, 54.
partior, 37.	plures, 70.	prodo, 54.	quoque, 23.
parvus, 6.	plurimum, 67.	proelium, 21.	quot, 56.
passus, 51, 71.	plus, 59.	profectio, 65.	quotidianus, 63.
pater, 9.	poena, 36.	profero, 40.	quotidie, 47.
patienter, 44.	Poeni, 36.	proficiat, 33.	quum, 25 (r).
pator, 36.	poenitet, p. 109.	profundus, 12.	Radix, 13.
patria, 2.	poeta, 2.	progreior, 53.	rapax, 13.

# 174 INDEX TO VOCABULARIES.—LATIN WORDS.

## RAPIDUS.

rapidus, 6.  
rapina, 62.  
rapio, p. 85.  
raro, 36.  
rarus, 15.  
ratio, 31, 73.  
ratia, 63.  
recens, 62.  
recipio, 67.  
recito, 53.  
recordor, 35.  
recreo, 25 (α).  
rectus, 25 (γ).  
recupero, 50.  
recuso, 57.  
redamo, 25 (γ).  
redeo, p. 106.  
redimo, 70.  
redintegratio, 72.  
refero, 72; p. 104.  
regina, 1.  
regno, 50.  
regnum, 5, 65.  
rego, 27.  
Regulus, 36.  
rejicio, 72.  
relinquo, 42.  
reliquus, 63.  
reminiscor, 36.  
removeo, 72.  
renovo, 25 (b).  
renuncio, 71.  
repentinus, 68.  
reperio, 28.  
reprehendo, 71.  
repugno, 71.  
res, 15, 70.  
rescindo, 66.  
resisto, 41.  
respondeo, 55.  
responsum, 63.  
resituo, 70.  
rete, 12.  
retineo, 70.  
reus, 35.  
revertor, 57.  
revertor, 52.  
rex, 7.  
Rhenus, 3.  
Rhodanus, 3.  
Rhodus, 52.  
ripa, 3.  
rogo, 53.  
Roma, 1.  
Romanus, 5, 11.  
Romulus, 7.  
rosa, 1.  
Roscius, 41.  
rupes, 11.  
rursus, 72.  
Sacer, 6.  
saepes, 25 (γ).  
saepenumero, 56.  
saepissime, 56.  
sagitta, 13.  
Saguntini, 51.  
Salamis, 36.

## SIMULATIO.

Sallustius, 24.  
salto, 43.  
salus, 20.  
salvus, 24.  
sanguis, 24.  
Santoni, 67.  
sapientia, 19.  
sapientia, 18.  
sapiō, p. 85.  
sarcina, 72.  
satis, 41.  
satisfacio, 69.  
Satrius, 57.  
sclerus, 12.  
scientia, 49.  
scio, 28.  
Scipio, 31.  
scribo, 27.  
scriptor, 24.  
scutum, 5.  
Seytha, 14.  
secreto, 70.  
secundum, p. 93.  
secundus, 73.  
sed, 49.  
sedeo, 43.  
sedes, 14.  
seditiosus, 70.  
segnities, 15.  
Segusiani, 67.  
semei, 27.  
sementis, 65.  
sempet, 18.  
senatus, 50.  
senectus, 35.  
senex, 73.  
seni, 69.  
sensu, 14.  
sentio, 50.  
separatim, 71.  
sepelio, 28.  
septemtriones, 64.  
septimus, 67.  
sepultura, 73.  
Sequana, 63.  
Sequani, 64.  
sequor, 30.  
serenus, 15.  
sermo, 10.  
sero, 44.  
servitus, 40.  
servo, 25 (γ).  
servus, 3.  
seu, 72.  
severus, 7.  
rex, p. 34.  
sexaginta, 73.  
si, 25 (α).  
Sicilia, 2.  
sidus, 12.  
signum, 57, 73.  
silentium, 45.  
silva, 16.  
similis, 47.  
simul, 27.  
simulacrum, 49.  
simulatio, 18.

## SUSCIPIO.

sin, 68.  
sine, p. 93.  
sinistra, 72.  
sive, 72.  
socer, 4.  
socius, 46.  
Socrates, 32.  
sol, 9.  
soleo, p. 108.  
Solon, 26.  
solum, 32.  
solus, p. 29.  
solvo, 27.  
somnia, 25 (α).  
sonitus, 18.  
soror, 9.  
sors, 20.  
Sparta, 52.  
specio, p. 85.  
specto, 27.  
specular, 56.  
speratus, 18.  
spero, 57.  
spes, 15.  
splendidus, 6.  
splendor, 42.  
statim, 50.  
statio, 25 (b).  
statno, 45.  
stella, 54.  
sto, 57.  
strenuus, 30.  
studeo, 11.  
studiosus, 59.  
studium, 30.  
stultitia, 48.  
stultus, 55.  
suadeo, 57.  
suavis, 18.  
sub, p. 94.  
subdifficilis, 56.  
subduco, 71.  
subeo, p. 106.  
subitus, 30.  
sublevo, 70.  
submoveo, 73.  
subsisto, 69.  
subsequor, 59.  
subsum, p. 40.  
subter, p. 94.  
subveho, 67.  
succedo, 72.  
sui, p. 41.  
summa, 73.  
summus, 3, 71.  
super, p. 94.  
superior, 72.  
supero, 25 (b).  
supersum, p. 40.  
superus, 55.  
suppeto, 69.  
suppliciter, 73.  
supplicium, 71.  
supra, p. 93.  
supremus, 45.  
suscipio, 50.

## TURPIS.

suspicio, 71.  
sustineo, 72.  
suus, 18.  
Tabernaculum, 40.  
tabula, 73.  
taceo, 48.  
taedet, p. 109.  
talis, 53.  
tam, 47.  
tamen, 69.  
tandem, 72.  
tantum, 36.  
taurus, 3.  
tego, 27.  
telum, 56.  
temeritas, 26.  
temperantia, 71.  
tempestas, 8.  
templum, 5.  
tempus, 12.  
teneo, 57.  
tener, 6.  
tenus, 28.  
tenus, p. 53.  
terra, 6.  
terreo, 26.  
terror, 25 (γ).  
tertius, 63.  
testis, 69.  
Thales, 54.  
Themistocles, 46.  
Tiberius (Ti.), 32.  
tigris, 41.  
Tigurinus, 63.  
timeo, 30.  
timidus, 6.  
timor, 25 (α).  
Timotheus, 53.  
Titus (T.), 20.  
tollo, 72.  
tonat, p. 110.  
totus, 9.  
trabs, 7.  
tracto, 25 (γ).  
trado, 54.  
traho, 27.  
tranquillus, 13.  
trans, p. 93.  
transduco, 57.  
transco, p. 106.  
transfigo, 72.  
Trasimenus, 36.  
Trebonius, 57.  
trecenti, 73.  
tres, 63.  
tribuo, 48.  
tribuum, 73.  
triginta, 73.  
triplex, 72.  
tristitia, 20.  
triumpho, 27.  
Troja, 29.  
Trojanus, 54.  
tueor, 35.  
Tulingi, 72.  
tum, 14.  
turpis, 28.

TURPITUDO.	VESCOR.	VIRGO.	XERXES.
turpitude, 55.	vallum, 73.	vesperascit, p. 110.	virtus, 17.
turris, 11.	varius, 9.	vesperus, 73.	vis, 67.
tutus, 14.	vasto, 25 ( <i>α</i> ).	Vesta, 29.	viso, 56.
tuus, 18.	vectigal, 12.	vester, 20.	visus, 14.
tyrannus, 42.	vehementer, 31.	vestimentum, 28.	vita, 2.
Ubi, 56.	veho, 31.	vestio, 28.	vito, 71.
ullus, p. 29.	Velentes, 58.	vestis, 11.	vitupero, 25 ( <i>α</i> ).
ulterior, 66.	velox, 13.	vetus, 13.	vivo, 38.
ultra, p. 93.	veneror, 34.	vexo, 50.	vix, 27.
undique, 64.	venio, 23.	via, 13.	voco, 71.
unquam, 45.	venor, 59.	victor, 9.	Vocontii, 67.
unus, p. 29.	ventito, 57.	victoria, 15.	volo (1 <i>conj.</i> ), 27.
urbs, 7.	ventus, 15 ( ).	vicus, 66.	volo ( <i>irr. v.</i> ), p. 99.
ut, p. 130.	Venusia, 53.	video, 54.	voluntas, 8, 71.
uter, p. 29.	ver, 18.	videor, 43.	voluptas, 14.
utilis, 13.	vereor, 35.	vigila, 68.	vox, 28.
utor, 36.	vergo, 64.	vigilo, 25 ( ).	vulgus, 71.
uxor, 40.	vero, 68.	vilia, 49.	vulnero, 29.
Vaco, 72.	verisimilis, 54.	vincio, 28.	vulnus, 18.
vadum, 66.	versus ( <i>subs.</i> ), 83.	vinco, 51.	vultus, 18.
valeo, 26.	versus ( <i>prep.</i> ), p. 93.	vinculum, 28.	vultus, 57.
valetudo, 25 ( <i>α</i> ).	verus, 17.	vinum, 13.	Xenophon, 56.
validus, 10.	vescor, 34.	virgo, 10.	Xerxes, 19.
vallis, 11.			

ENGLISH WORDS.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.	<i>f.</i>	= feminine.	<i>p.</i>	= page.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.	<i>gen.</i>	= genitive.	<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.	<i>indec.</i>	= indeclinable.	<i>pl.</i>	= plural.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.	<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite.	<i>prep.</i>	= preposition.
<i>c.</i>	= common gender.	<i>interj.</i>	= interjection.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.	<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative.	<i>rel.</i>	= relative.
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.	<i>m.</i>	= masculine.	<i>sing.</i>	= singular.
<i>dat.</i>	= dative.	<i>n.</i>	= neuter.	<i>sup.</i>	= superlative.

**1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.**

**Abandon.**  
 Relinquo, Iqui, letum, 3.  
 possum, p. 97.  
 domicilium, II, n.  
 circā, circum, circiter,  
*adv.*, and *prep.* with  
*acc.* [*acc.*  
 sup̄r, sup̄rā, *prep.* with  
 h̄bitor, usus, 3, with *abl.*  
 cūsus, us, m.  
 cōm̄tor, atus, 1.  
 conf. clo, fēcl, sectum, 3.  
 a. cundum, *prep.* with  
*acc.* [*acc.*  
 ūb, propt̄r, *prep.* with  
 acc. so, avi, atum, 1.  
 reus, I, m.  
 sūleo, p. 108.  
 ādip̄scor, eptus, 3.  
 tra, *prep.* with *acc.*  
 āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.  
 gūdv. f. r. *adv.*  
 mīror, admīror, atus, 1.  
 orno, avi, atum, 1.  
 cons̄llum, II, n.  
 suideo, si, sum, 2, with  
*dat.*; mōneo, ui, itum,  
 aerruma, ae, f. [3].  
 praebeo, ui, itum, 2.  
 post, *prep.* with *acc.*  
 contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*  
 aetās, ātia, f.  
 sēnectus, ītia, f.  
 nātus, a, um.  
 consensio, ei, sum, 4.  
 constat, at tit, 1.  
 aux̄llum, II, n.  
 h̄er, āria, m.  
 terreo, rui, 2.  
 omnia, e. adi.

**ARRIVE.**  
 all together,  
 allowed, it is,  
 ally,  
 almost,  
 alone,  
 Alps,  
 already,  
 also,  
 altogether,  
 always,  
 among,  
 ——— to be,  
 amuse,  
 ancestors,  
 ancient,  
 and,  
 anger,  
 angry, to be,  
 animal,  
 animal, small,  
 another, of several,  
 another, of two,  
 answer,  
 any,  
 any time, at,  
 appear,  
 apple,  
 apple-tree,  
 appoint,  
 approach,  
 arms,  
 army,  
 around,  
 arrange,  
 arrive,

**ARRIVE.**  
 cunctus, a, um, *adj.*  
 I cet, p. 109.  
 sc̄cius, II, m.  
 pr̄p̄t, paenē, *adv.*  
 s̄olus, a, um.  
 Alpes, Ium, f.  
 jam, *adv.*  
 c̄tiam, *adv.*  
 pl̄nē, *adv.*  
 semp̄r, *adv.*  
 int̄r, *prep.* with *acc.*  
 intersum, p. 39.  
 d̄electo, avi, atum, 1.  
 m̄j̄ōres, pl. m.  
 antiq̄us, a, um, *adj.*  
 ēt, atque, ac, quē, *conj.*  
 ira, ae, f.  
 irascor, fr̄atus, 3.  
 f̄imal, ātia, n.  
 best̄ia, ae, f.  
 ālius, a, ud, *indef. pron.*  
 alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*  
 respondeo, di, sum, 2.  
 ullus, a, um, *indef.*  
 unquam, *adv.* [*pron.*  
 videor, Ius, 2.  
 m̄lum, I, n.  
 m̄lus, I, f.  
 inst tuo, ūi, itum, 3.  
 appropinquo, advento,  
 avi, atum, 1.  
 arma, orum, pl. n.  
 exerc̄tus, us, m.  
 circā, circum, *adv.* and  
*prep.* with *acc.*; cir-  
 citer, *adv.*  
 instruo, xl, etum, 3.  
 adv̄nio, perv̄nio, vēni-  
 ventum, 4.

arrival,	ARRIVAL	blame, <i>subs.</i> ,	CENTURY.
arriving, to be on }	adventus, <i>us, m.</i>	blockade,	culpa, <i>ae, f.</i>
the point of, }	advento, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	blood,	obediō, <i>ōnis, f.</i>
arrow,	sagitta, <i>ae, f.</i>	bloom,	sanguis, <i>inis, m.</i>
art,	ars, <i>rtis, f.</i>	blossom forth,	flōreo, <i>ui, —, 2.</i>
as,	tam, <i>adv.</i>	blow,	effloresco, <i>flōrui, 3.</i>
as,	ut, <i>conj.</i>	body,	flo, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>
as if,	quasi, <i>conj.</i>	bold,	corpus, <i>ōris, n.</i>
as far as,	tamē, <i>prep. with abl. and gen.</i>	bond,	audax, <i>acis, adj.</i>
as soon as,	simul atque ( <i>ac</i> ).	bone,	vinculum, <i>i, n.</i>
ascertain,	cognosco, <i>ōvi, itum, 3.</i>	book,	os, <i>ossis, n.</i>
ask,	ri go, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	booty,	liber, <i>bri, m.</i>
assault,	oppugno, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	born, be,	praeda, <i>ae, f.</i>
assign,	tribuo, <i>ūi, itum, 3.</i>	boundary,	nascor, <i>natus, 3.</i>
assist,	adjuvo, <i>j. vi, j. tum, l.</i>	bow,	finis, <i>is, m.</i>
assistance,	auxilium, <i>il, n.</i>	boy,	arcus, <i>us, m.</i>
assuage,	mollo, <i>lvi, itum, 4.</i>	brave,	pier, <i>eri, m.</i>
at,	ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	bravely,	fortis, <i>e, adj.</i>
Athenian,	Athēnensis, <i>e, adj.</i>	bridge,	fortiter, <i>adv.</i>
Athens,	Athēnae, <i>arum, f.</i>	bright,	pona, <i>tis, m.</i>
attack, <i>subs.</i> ,	impetus, <i>us, m.</i>	bring,	splendus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
attack, <i>verb.</i> ,	oppugno, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	— in, etc.,	fero, <i>p. 102.</i> [ <i>p. 104</i>
attain to,	ad piscor, <i>eptus, 3.</i>	— to an end,	acc compounds of fero,
attempt,	cōnor, <i>atus, l.</i>	bring forth,	finio, <i>ivi, itum, 4; con-</i>
attentive,	attentus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	Britain,	ficio, <i>fecit, fectum, 3.</i>
attentively,	attenti, <i>adv.</i>	Briton,	pario, <i>p.peri, partum,</i>
author,	scriptor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	Br. tannus, <i>1, m.</i>	Br. tannus, <i>ae, f.</i> [3.
authority,	auctoritas, <i>ātis, f.</i>	broad,	litus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
autumn,	auctumnus, <i>i, m.</i>	brother,	frater, <i>tris, m.</i>
awake, to be,	vigilo, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	bulld,	aedifico, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>
Bad,	malus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	building,	aedificium, <i>il, n.</i>
bank,	ripa, <i>ae, f.</i>	bull,	taurus, <i>i, m.</i>
base,	turpis, <i>e, adj.</i>	burden,	onus, <i>ōris, n.</i>
battle,	pugna, <i>ae, f.; proellum.</i>	burn, <i>intrans.</i> ,	ardeo, <i>si, sum, 2.</i>
be,	sum, <i>p. 36.</i> [ <i>il, n.</i>	bury,	sépello, <i>ivi, pultum, 4.</i>
— in, among, etc.,	trabe, <i>triblis, f.</i> [ <i>p. 39.</i>	business,	negotium, <i>il, n.</i>
beam,	fero, <i>tūli, lātum, p. 102.</i>	busy,	occipatus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
bear,	perféro, <i>etc.</i>	but,	s. d. autem; see <i>Vocab.</i>
— through,	bestia, <i>ae, f.</i>	buy,	23.
beast,	bellua, <i>ae, f.</i>	by,	imo, <i>ōmi, emptum, 3.</i>
beast, great,	pulcher, <i>ra, rum, adj.</i>	Call to mind,	ā, <i>ab, prep. with abl.</i>
beautiful,	quid, <i>quod, conj.</i>	call together,	recondor, <i>atus, l.</i>
because,	ob, <i>propter, prep. with flo, p. 107.</i> [ <i>icc.</i>	calm,	convico, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>
because of,	dūcet, <i>p. 109.</i>	camp,	tranquillus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
become,	anti, <i>prep. with acc.;</i>	can,	castra, <i>orum, pl. n.</i>
becomes, it,	prae, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	can not,	possum, <i>p. 95.</i>
before,	dro, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	can not but, I,	n. queo, <i>lvi or il, itum, 4.</i>
beg,	incipio, <i>cēpi, ceptum, 3.</i>	care, take,	fūc. rō nōn possum
begin,	initium, <i>il, n.</i>	careful,	quā.
beginning,	prō, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	carefully,	c. ro, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>
behalf of, on,	pōne, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	carry,	dil gens, <i>ntis, adj.</i>
behind,	oportet, <i>p. 109.</i>	carry a wall,	diligenter, <i>adv.</i>
behooves, it,	crōdo, <i>didi, ditum, 3.</i>	Carthage,	porto, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>
believe,	sūb, <i>subter, prep. with acc. and abl.</i>	Carthaginian,	g. ro, <i>essi, ectum, 3.</i>
beneath,	prae, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	cast away,	m. rum d. co, <i>xi, etum,</i>
beside,	obsideo, <i>sēdi, sessum, 2.</i>	cast forth, out,	Carthāgo, <i>inis, f.</i> [3.
besiege,	inter, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	cast down,	Carthāg. ientis, <i>e, auj.</i>
between,	ultrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	catch,	abj. cio, <i>ēci, ectum, 3.</i>
beyond,	vincio, <i>uxi, nectum, 4.</i>	Catiline,	cj. cio, <i>ēci, ectum, 3.</i>
bind,	avis, <i>is, f.</i>	cause,	dāj. cio, <i>ēci, ectum; affi-</i>
bird,	n. ger, <i>gra, grum; ūter,</i>	cavalry,	go, <i>xi, etum, 3.</i>
black,	tra, <i>trum.</i>	celebrated,	c. pio, <i>cēpi, ceptum, 3.</i>
blame,	culpo, <i>avi, atum, l.</i>	century,	Catiline, <i>ae, m.</i>

certain,  
chain,  
chance,  
chance, by,  
change,  
charge,  
chariot,  
chastise,  
cheap,  
cheer,  
cheerful,  
cheese,  
cherish,  
cherry,  
cherry-tree,  
children,  
Cicero,  
Cimbrians,  
citadel,  
citizen,  
citizenship,  
city,  
civil, belonging to }  
a citizen,

clear,  
cloak,  
clothe,  
clothing,  
cloud,  
coast,  
cohort,  
cold,  
colony,  
color,  
come,  
— frequently,  
— to pass,  
commander,  
commission,  
common,  
commonly,  
commonwealth,  
companion,  
comparison, in,  
comrade,  
concerning,  
confess,

conflagration,  
conquer,  
conqueror,  
conscience,  
conspiracy,  
constellation,  
consul,  
—, office of,  
consult,  
consume,

contemplate,  
contented,  
contend,  
contrary to,  
converse,  
Corinth,  
correct,  
counsel,

## CERTAIN.

certus, a, um, *adj.*  
vinculum, i, *n.*  
cæsus, us, *m.*  
cæsi, *abl.* used as *adv.*  
m.to, avi, atum, 1.  
mando, avi, atum, 1.  
currus, us, *m.*  
castigo, avi, atum, 1.  
villus, e, *adj.*  
exhilâro, avi, atum, 1.  
hilâris, e, *adj.*  
cæsus, i, *m.*  
côlo, ul, cultum, 3.  
c râsum, i, *n.*  
côrâsus, i, *f.*  
librî, orum, *m.*  
U'c'ro, onis, *m.*  
Cimbri, orum, *m.*  
arx, arcis, *f.*  
civis, is, *c.*  
civitas, itis, *f.*  
urbs, bis, *f.*  
civilis, e, *adj.*

clârus, a, um, *adj.*  
pallium, il, *n.*  
vestio, ivi, itum, 4.  
vestis, is, *f.*; vestimen-  
tibus, is, *f.* [tum, i, *n.*  
ôra, ae, *f.*  
côhorr, ritis, *f.*  
frigus, ôris, *n.*  
côlônia, ae, *f.*  
côlor, ôris, *m.*  
vênio, vênî, ventum, 4.  
ventitô, avi, atum, 1.  
flo, factus, fieri  
imp'rator, ôris, *m.*  
mandatum, i, *n.*  
communis, e; villis, e,  
[*adj.*

respubl'ca, *see* p. 26.  
cômes, itis, *c.*  
præ, *prep.* with *acc.*  
sôcius, il, *m.*  
dê, *prep.* with *abl.*  
fâteor, fassus; confite-  
or, fessus, 3.  
incendium, il, *n.*  
vinco, vici, victum, 3.  
victor, ôris, *m.*  
conscientia, ae, *f.*  
conjûrâtio, ônis, *f.*  
sîdus, ôris, *n.*  
consul, ilis, *m.*  
consûliâtus, ur, *m.*  
consûlo, lui, itum, 3.  
abs'mo, sumpsi, sump-  
tum, 3.  
contemplor, atus, 1.  
contentus, a, um, *adj.*  
perpétuus, a, um, *adj.*  
contrâ, *prep.* with *acc.*  
coll'quor, l'c'atus, 3.  
Côrînthus, i, *f.*  
corr'go, exi, ectum, 3.  
consilium, il, *n.*

count,  
countenance,  
country, one's,  
cover,  
cowardice,  
create,  
creator,  
credible,  
Crete,  
crime,  
crop,  
cross over,  
crown,  
cruel,  
crush,  
cry out,

cultivate,  
— carefully,

curb,  
current,  
custom,  
cut off,  
Dance,  
danger,  
dangerous,  
dare,  
daring,  
daringly,  
darken,  
dart,  
daughter,  
day,  
dead,  
deal with,  
dear,  
death,  
deceive,  
deep, bold, daring,  
deep,  
defeat,  
defend,  
defendant,  
delicate,  
delight,  
delightful,  
delightfully,  
deliver,  
demand,  
deny,  
depart,

deplore,  
deserve,  
desire,  
—, *subj.*,  
derpise,

despot,  
destitute,  
destroy,  
destruction,  
destructive,  
deter,  
determine,

## DETERMINE.

nûmëro, avi, atum, 1.  
vultus, us, *m.*  
patria, ae, *f.*  
tûgo, xi, ctum, 3.  
ignâvia, ae, *f.*  
crô, avi, atum, 1.  
creator, ôris, *m.*  
crédibilis, e, *adj.*  
Crêta, ae, *f.*  
sôcius, ôris, *n.*  
messis, is, *f.*  
traneo, p. 106.  
côrôna, ae, *f.*  
crûdëlis, e, *adj.*  
opprimo, essi, esum, 3.  
clamo, exclamo, avi,  
atum, 1.

côlo, cûlui, cultum, 3.  
excôlo, etc.  
côerceo, ul, itum, 2.  
fîl'men, inis, *n.*  
consuetudo, inis, *f.*  
interlido, ei, sum, 3.  
salto, avi, atum, 1.  
pêricûlum, i, *n.*  
pêricûlôsus, a, um, *adj.*  
audeo, p. 108.  
audax, âcis, *adj.*  
audacter, *adv.*  
obscuro, avi, atum, 1.  
têlum, i, *n.*  
filia, ae, *f.*  
dies, ei, *m.* and *f.*  
mortuus, a, um, *adj.*  
tracto, avi, atum, 1.  
cârus, a, um, *adj.*  
mors, ritis, *f.*  
dêciplo, cêpi, ceptum, 3.  
fâc'ius, ôris, *n.*  
altus, a, um, *adj.*  
clâdes, is, *f.*  
dêfendo, i, sum, 3.  
rûs, i, *m.*  
tênulis, e, *adj.*  
dêlecto, avi, atum, 1.  
dulcis, suavis, e, *adj.*  
j'cundê, *adv.*  
libro, avi, atum, 1.  
postûlo, avi, atum, 1.  
n'go, avi, atum, 1.  
exco'do, cessi, cessum, 3;  
migro, émigro, avi,  
atum, 1.  
dêplôro, avi, atum, 1.  
m'reor, itus, 2.  
cûpio, ivi and ii, itum, 3.  
stûdium, il, *n.*; cûp'd-  
itas, itis, *f.*  
contemno, m'p'i, mptum,  
3; aspernor, atus, 1.  
týrannus, i, *m.*  
inope, ôpis, *adj.*  
perdo, didi, ditum, 3.  
ext'ium, il, *n.*  
pern'cious, a, um, *adj.*  
dêterreo, ui, itum, 2.  
constituo, ti, ctum, 3.



devote one's self, **DEVOTE.**  
  p. ram do, d di, d -  
 tum, d re, 1.  
 devoted to,  
 dia.  
 difficult,  
 difficult, somewhat,  
 dig,  
 diligence,  
 diligent,  
 dine,  
 disaster,  
 discern,  
 discharge,  
 discourse,  
 discover,  
 disease,  
 disembark, *trans.*,  
 disgrace,  
 disgraceful,  
 disgusts, it,  
 dishonest,  
 dishonesty,  
 dismiss,  
 displease,  
 disposed,  
 distance,  
 distant,  
 — to be,  
 distinguished,  
 distrust,  
 disturb,  
 ditch,  
 divide,  
 divine,  
 dog,  
 doubt,  
 doubtful,  
 dove,  
 drag, draw,  
 draw together,  
 draw up in order,  
 drink,  
 drive out,  
 duty,  
 dwell,  
 Eager after,  
 eager, be,  
 eagle,  
 ear,  
 earnestly,  
 earth,  
 easily,  
 easy,  
 eat,  
 educate,  
 elegant,  
 elephant,  
 eloquent,  
 embark,  
 ambassador,  
  p. ram do, d di, d -  
 tum, d re, 1.  
 addictus, a, um, *adj.*  
 m rior, mortuus, 2.  
 difficilis, e, *adj.*  
 subdifficilis, e, *adj.*  
 f dio, f di, f ssum, 3.  
 diligentia, ae, *f.*  
 diligens, ntis, *adj.*  
 coeno, avi, atum, p. 108.  
 cl des, is, *f.*  
 cerno, cr vi, cr tum, 3.  
 fungor, nctus, 3, p. 90.  
 sermo,  nis, m.  
 d t go, xi, ctum, 3.  
 morbus, i, m.  
 exp no, p sui, p situm,  
 turp tudo, inis, *f.* [3.  
 turpia, e, *adj.*  
 taedet, p. 100.  
 impr bus, a, um, *adj.*  
 fraus, dia, *f.* [3.  
 dimitto, m si, missum,  
 displiceo, ul, itum, 2,  
 with *dat.*  
 affectus, a, um, *adj.*  
 longinquit s, itis, *f.*  
 longinquus, a, um, *adj.*  
 absum, p. 89.  
 insignis, e;  gr gius, a,  
 um, *adj.*  
 diffido, isus, 3, p. 108.  
 turbo, avi, atum, 1;  
 m veo, m vi, m tum,  
 fossa, ae, *f.* [2.  
 s piro, avi, atum, 1; di-  
 vido, is, isum, 3.  
 divinus, a, um, *adj.*  
 factio, f ci, factum, 3.  
 cinis, is, c.  
 d b to, avi, atum, 1.  
 d b lus, a, um, *adj.*  
 c lumba, ae, *f.*  
 tr ho, xi, ctum, 3.  
 contr ho, xi, ctum, 3.  
 instruo, xi, ctum, 3.  
 h bo, i, itum, 3.  
 expello, p lli, pulsum, 3.  
 m nus,  ris, n.  
 h b to, avi, atum, 1.  
 st digeus, a, um, *adj.*  
 with *gen.*  
 st deo, ul, —, 2.  
  qu la, ae, *f.*  
 auris, is, *f.*  
 v h ment r, *adv.*  
 terra, ae, *f.*  
 f c l , *adv.*  
 f c lis, e, *adj.*  
  do,  di,  sum, 3.  
  d co, avi, atum, 1.  
  l gans, ntis, *adj.*  
  l phantus, i, m.  
  l quens, ntis, *adj.*  
 n vem (naves), conscen-  
 do, di, sum, 3.  
 l g tur, i, m.

embroider,  
 eminent,  
 empire,  
 employ,  
 encourage,  
 end,  
 end, put to,  
 endure,  
 enemy (public),  
 —, personal,  
 engaged,  
 enjoy,  
 enmity,  
 enough,  
 enter,  
 entice,  
 entreat,  
 envy,  
 epistle,  
 esteem,  
 eternal,  
 Europe,  
 even,  
 even,  
 evening draws on,  
 ever,  
 every,  
 every day,  
 every one,  
 evident, it is,  
 evil, an,  
 example,  
 excellent,  
 except,  
 exercise to,  
 exhibit,  
 exhort,  
 exile,  
 —, live in,  
 experienced,  
 extend,  
 eye,  
 Fable,  
 fall,  
 faith,  
 faithful,  
 far,  
 — and wide,  
 farther, too far,  
 father,  
 father-in-law,  
 fault,  
 fault, find,  
 favor,  
 fear,  
 fear, to,  
 feeble,  
 pingo, nxi, ctum, 3.  
 exumius,  gr gius, a,  
 um, *adj.*  
 imp rtum, ii, n.  
  dhibeo, ul, itum, 2.  
 hortor, atus, 1.  
 finis, is, m.  
 finio, ivi, itum, 4.  
 p tior, passus, 3; f ra,  
 hostis. [p. 102.  
 inimicus, i, m.  
 occup tus, a, um, *adj.*  
 fruor, itus and ctus, 3,  
 with *abl.*  
 inimicitia, ae, *f.*  
 s tis, *adv.*  
 intro, avi, atum, 1.  
 illicio, exi, ectum, 3.  
  ro, avi, atum, 1.  
 invidia, ae, *f.*  
  pist la, ae, *f.*  
 d lgo, exi, ectum, 3.  
 aeternus, a, um, *adj.*  
 Eur pa, ae, *f.*  
 aequus, a, um, *adj.*  
  tiam, *conj.*  
 vesp rascit, p. 110.  
 unquam, *adv.*  
 omnis, e, *adj.*  
 qu tidie, *adv.*  
 quisque, quaeque, quod-  
 que, and *subst.* quic-  
 que (quidque), *pron.*  
 constat, st. tit, 1.  
 m lum, i, n.  
 exemplum, i, n.  
 praestans,antis; prae-  
 st bilis, e, *adj.*  
 praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*  
 exerceo, ul, itum, 2.  
 praebeo, ul, itum, 2.  
 hortor,  dhortor, atus,  
 exilium, ii, n. [1.  
 exilium,  go,  gi, ac-  
 tum, 3.  
 p ritus, a, um, *adj.*  
 prof ro, t lli, latum,  
 ferre, 3.  
  c lus, i, m.  
 fab la, ae, *f.*  
 c do, cecidi, c sum, 3.  
 fides, ei, *f.*  
 fid lis, e; fidus, a, um,  
 long , *adv.* [ *uf.*  
 long  lit qu .  
 longius, *adv.* *com p.*  
 p ter, tris, m.  
 a cer,  ri, m.  
 culpa, ae, *f.*  
 vit pero, culpo, avi,  
 atum, 1.  
 gr tia, ae, *f.* [ n.  
 m tus, us; t mor,  ris,  
 m tuo, i,  tum, 3;  
 meo, ul, —, 2; v roor,  
 itus, 2.  
 d b lis, e, a, vi.

feed on,	<b>FEED.</b>	funeral,	<b>HAVE.</b>
feel,	vescor, —, i, 2.	furnish,	funus, ōris, n.
feign,	sento, ai, sum, 4.	gain,	præbeo, ui, itum, 2.
fellow-citizen,	similo, avi, atum, 1.	game,	pāro, avi, atum, 1.
fellow-soldier,	civis, is, c.	garden,	ludus, i, m.
few,	commilito, ōnis, m.	garment,	hortus, i, m.
fidelity,	paucus, a, um, adj.		vestis, is, f.; vestimen-
field,	fides, ei, f.	gate,	tum, i, n.
fierce,	āger, gri, m.	gather,	porta, ae, f.
fiery, made of fire,	ferox, ōcis, adj.	—— together,	ago, legi, lectum, 3.
fig, fig-tree,	igneus, a, um, adj.	Gaul,	contrāho, xi, ctum, 3.
fight,	ficus, i, f.	gaze,	Gallia, ae, f.
fight (a battle),	pugno, avi, atum, 1.	general,	tueor, itus and tūtus, 2.
	committo, misi, mis-	get, gain,	impātor, ōris, m.
find,	sum, 3.		pāro, avi, atum, 1; ōd-
	rōpōrio, peri, pertum,	get back,	ipascor, eptus, 3.
find fault with,	invēnio, vni, ven-	get together,	rūcīpāro, avi, atum, 1.
finish,	tum, 4. [atum, 1.	gift,	cōgo, cōegi, cōactum, 3.
finished,	culpo, vtiptō, avi,	girl,	dōnum, i, n.
fire,	conficio, fūci, factum, 3.	give,	pūella, ae, f.
fire, be on,	perfectus, a, um, adj.	glide,	do, dōdi, dātum, dāre, 1.
first, adv.,	ignis, is, m.	glory,	libor, lapsus, 3.
first rate,	ardeo, ai, sum, 2.	go,	glōria, ae, f.
fish,	primo, primum, adv.	— in, out, etc.,	eo, see p. 105.
fix,	primārius, a, um, adj.	— to see,	see comps. of eo, p. 105.
flatter,	placis, is, m.	God,	viso, i, um, 3.
flattery,	figo, xi, xum, 3.	goddess,	Deus, i, m., f. 26.
fleet,	ādūlor, atus, 1.	gods, of the,	dea, ae, f.
flesh,	ādūlatio, ōnis, f.	gold,	divinus, a, um, adj.
flower,	fūgio, fugi, fūgitum, 3.	golden,	aurum, i, n.
follow,	confugio, etc.	good,	aureus, a, um, adj.
follow up,	classis, is, f.	good, subs.,	b'nus, prōbus, a, um,
fully,	cāro, carnis, f.	good, do,	bōnum, i, n. [acj.
foolish,	flos, ōris, m.	goods,	prōsum, p. 39.
foot-soldier,	s'quor, secutus, 3.	govern,	bōna, ōrum, pl. n.
for (prep.),	subsequor, etc.	grandfather,	gūberno, avi, atum, 1.
— (conj.),	stultitia, ae, f.	grape,	avus, i, m.
forage,	stultus, a, um, adj.	great,	grāmen, inis, n.
forced marches,	pōdes, itis, m.	great, how,	magnus, a, um, adj.
forces,	pro, prep. with abl.	greatly,	quantus, a, um, rel. adj.
forehead,	nam, enim, conj.	Greece,	magnopere, adv.
foresee,	pābilor, atus, 1.	Greek, Grecian,	Græcia, ae, f.
forget,	maxima itinera (ter).		Græcus, a, um, adj.
form (a plan),	cōpias, arum, pl. f.		dūlor, ōris, m.
former,	frons, tis, f.		p'get, p. 109.
	prōvideo, vidi, visum, 2.		grāviter, adv.
formerly,	obliviscor, litus, 3, with		hūmus, i, f.
fortification,	Ineo, p. 106. [gen.		custōdio, fvi, itum, 4.
	pristinus, a, um, prior,		custos, ōdis, m.
	us, adj.		scelus, ōris, n.
	quondam, adv.		noxius, a, um, adj.
	munimentum, i, n.;		consuetudo, inis, f.
	moenia, um, p. n.		grandnat, p. 110.
fortify,	mūnio, fvi, itum, 4.		mānus, us, f.
fortune,	fortuna, ae, f.		trādo, prōdo, didi, di-
fortunate,	felix, icis, adj.		tum, 3.
fountain,	fons, ntis, m.		tracto, avi, atum, 1.
frame, to,	fabro, avi, atum, 1.		fio, p. 107.
free,	liber, tra, ōrum, adj.		bēatus, a, um, adj.
freedom,	libertas, ātis, f.		bātē, adv.
freely,	libere, adv.		vexo, avi, atum, 1.
friend,	amicus, i, m.		portus, us, m.
friendship,	amicitia, ae, f.		durus, a, um, adj.
frighten,	terreo, ui, itum, 2.		libor, ōris, m.
from,	ā (āb), de, prep. with		lcpus, ōris, m.
fruit,	fructus, us, m. [abl.		contendo, di, sum and
full,	plenus, a, um, a'j.		ōdium, il, n. [tum, &
function,	mūnus, ōris, n.		hābeo, ui, itum, 2.

- have, rather, pre-fer, head, —, be at the, health, health, be in, heap up, hear, hearing, heart, heat, heaven, heavens, belong- ing to, heavily, heavy, help, helpless, high, —, very, highest,
- his, hers, hold a levy,
- hold together, honesty, honor, hope, —, *subst.*, hoped for, horn, horse, horse-soldier, hostage, hour, house, how great, how many, human, hunger, hunt, hurt, harm, hurtful, hurtful, to be, husbandman, if, if, as, ignorance, ignorant of (be), ill, *adj.*, —, *adv.*, illness, ill will, ill wishing, image, imitate, immediately, immense, immortal, immortality, impair, implety, impious, improve, imprudence, in, into, indeed,
- HAVE.  
mālo, p. 99.  
cāpit, itis, n.  
praesum, p. 99.  
sūlus, itis, f.  
vāleo, ul, itum, f.  
extruo, xi, ctum, f.  
audio, ivi, itum, f.  
auditus, us, m.  
cār, dis, n.  
cālor, ōris, m.  
coelum, i, n.  
coelestis, e, *adj.*  
grāviter, *adv.*  
grāvis, e, *adj.*  
adjūvo, jūvi, jūtum, l.  
inera, eris, *adj.*  
altus, a, um, *adj.*  
praealtus, a, um, *adj.*  
summus, a, um, *adj.*  
*sup.*  
silus, a, um, *adj. pron.*  
delectum hūbeo, ul, itum, f.  
contineo, ul, entum, f.  
prībitas, itis, f.  
hōnor, ōris, m.  
spīro, avi, atum, l.  
speo, ēi, f.  
sperātus, a, um, *adj.*  
cornu, us, n.  
ēquus, i, m.  
ēquū, itis, m.  
obscū, idis, c.  
hōra, ae, f.  
dūmus, *see* p. 26.  
quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*  
quōt, indecl. *rel. adj.*  
hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*  
fūmus, is, f.  
vēnor, atus, l. [*dat.*  
nōceo, ul, itum, f. with  
noxius, a, um, *adj.*  
obsum, p. 39.  
agriōla, ae, m.  
sī, *conj.*  
quāsi, *conj.*  
ignōrātio, ōnis, f.  
ignōro, avi, atum, l.  
mālus, a, um, *adj.*  
mālū, *adv.*  
morbus, i, m.  
invidia, ae, f.  
mālēvōlus, a, um, *adj.*  
īmāgo, inis, f.  
īm tor, atus, l.  
stātīm, *adv.*  
ingens, tis, *adj.*  
immortālis, e, *adj.*  
immortālitās, itis, f.  
infringo, frēgi, fractum,  
nūcas, indecl. *subst.* [f.  
ēmendo, avi, atum, l.  
imprudentia, ae, f.  
in, *prep.* with *acc.* and  
quidam, *conj.* [ *abl.*
- indolence,  
indulge,  
industrious,  
infamous,  
infamy,  
infantry,  
inferior,  
infinite,  
infirm,  
inhabitant,  
injure,  
injurious,  
innumerable,  
inquire,  
institute,  
instrument,  
integrity,  
intellect,  
intercept,  
invent,  
iron,  
island,  
Italy,  
its,  
Join,  
join (battle),  
journey,  
joy,  
joyful,  
judge,  
—, *verb.*,  
judgment,  
just,  
justly,  
judge,  
Keen,  
keep off,  
keep guard,  
kill,  
kind,  
kindly,  
king,  
—, be,  
kingdom,  
knee,  
know,  
—, not,  
knowledge,  
—, without,  
known,  
Labor,  
lake,  
lament over,  
land,  
language,  
large,  
last day,  
last, at,  
Latin,  
law,  
lay siege to,
- LAY SIEGE TO.  
ignavia, ae; segnitias, ēi, f.  
indulgeo, si, sum, f. with *dat.*  
industrius, a, um, *adj.*  
infāmis, e, *adj.*  
infāmia, ae, f.  
pēditātus, us, m.  
infērior, us, *adj. comp.*  
infinitus, a, um, *adj.*  
dōbīlis, e, *adj.*  
inōcia, ae, c.  
obsum, p. 39; nōceo, ul, itum, f. with *dat.*  
noxius, a, um, *adj.*  
innūmerus, a, um, *adj.*  
rēgo, avi, atum, l.; quaeero, quaeerē, quaeeritum, f.  
institutio, ul, itum, f.  
instrumentum, i, n.  
prībitas, itis, f.  
mens, tis, f.  
interclūdo, si, sum, f.  
rōpērio, perī, pertum, f.  
ferrum, i, n.  
insūla, ae, f.  
Itālia, ae, f.  
sūlus, a, um, *adj. pron.*  
jungo, xi, ctum, f.  
proelium committo, mī- si, missum, f.  
Iter, itinēris, n.  
gēdium, il, n.  
laetus, a, um, *adj.*  
judex, icis, m.  
judico, avi, atum, l.  
jū- d. cium, il, n.  
justus, a, um, *adj.*  
justē, *adv.*  
ācar, cris, ere, *adj.*  
prōh. beo, ul, itum, f.  
v gilo, avi, atum, l.  
interficio, fēcī, fectum,  
bēnignus, a, um, *adj.* [f.  
b nignē, *adv.*  
lex, rēgis, m.  
regno, avi, atum, l.  
regnum, i, n.  
g' nu, us, n.  
scio, ivi and ii, itum, f.  
nescio, etc. [f.  
scientia, prudentia, ae, clam, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*  
nōtus, a, um, *adj.*  
lābor, ōris, m.  
lācus, us, m.  
dēplōro, avi, atum, l.  
terra, ae, f.; īger, grī, lingua, ae, f. [m.  
magnus, a, um, *adj.*  
suprēmus, dies, m.  
dēmum, *adv.*  
Lātīnus, a, um, *adj.*  
lex, lēgis, f.  
obs. d. c. ōdi, esum, f.

lay waste,  
lead,  
lead across,  
lead out,  
leader,  
learn,

— = ascertain,  
learn in addition,  
learned,  
leave,  
leg,  
legion,  
length,  
lest,  
lest, and,  
letter of the al-

phabet,  
letter (an epistle),  
letters, literature,  
levy,  
liar, lying,  
licitor,  
lie (on the ground),  
lie (to speak falsely),  
lieutenant,  
life,  
light, *adj.*,  
light, *nuba*,  
light, it becomes,  
lightning,  
like,  
likely,  
likeness,  
limit,  
limit, to,  
line of battle,  
liop,  
little,  
live,  
live on,  
live in exile,  
Livy,  
load,  
lofty,  
long, *adj.*,  
long, *adv.*,  
look at,  
look upon or into,  
looks,  
loosen,  
lord,  
lot,  
love,

love in return,  
lovely,  
low,  
lower,  
luckily,  
lucky,  
Macedonian,  
made,

madness,  
magistrate,  
magnificent,  
maiden,

## LAY WASTE.

vasto, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
dūco, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.  
transdūco, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.  
ēdūco, etc., 3.  
dux, dūcis, *c*.  
disco, didici, —, 3.  
cognosco, *ovi*, *itum*, 3.  
addisco, etc., 3.  
doctus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
rēlinquo, *iqui*, *ictum*, 3.  
crūs, *iris*, *n*.  
lēgio, *onis*, *f*.  
longitudo, *inis*, *f*.  
nē, p. 180.  
dēv.

lītēra, *ae*, *f*, p. 157.

lītērae, *arum*, *epistōla*,  
lītērae, *arum*, *f*. [*ae*, *f*.  
dēlectus, *us*, *m*.  
mendax, *acis*, *adj.*  
licitor, *oris*, *m*.  
Jāceo, *ui*, —, 2.  
mentior, *itus*, 4.

ligātus, *i*, *m*.  
vita, *ae*, *f*.  
lēvis, *e*, *adj.*  
lux, *lūcis*, *f*.  
lūcescit, p. 110.  
fulmen, *inis*, *n*.  
similis, *e*, *adj.*  
vērissimilis, *e*, *adj.*  
imāgo, *inis*, *f*.  
finis, *m*.

finio, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.  
ācis, *ei*, *f*.  
leo, *onis*, *m*.

parvus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
vivo, *vixi*, *victum*, 3.

vescor, *i*, 3.

exiliū, *ago*, *ēgi*, *ac*.

Livius, *ii*, *m*. [*ium*, 3.

onus, *oris*, *n*.  
celsus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

longus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

dīū, *adv*.

specto, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

intueor, *tutus* and *tū*-  
vultus, *us*, *m*. [*tus*, 2.

solvō, *solvi*, *solutum*, 3.

dōminus, *i*, *m*.

sors, *ris*, *f*.

āmo, *avi*, *atum*, 1; dīlī-

go, *lexi*, *lectum*, 3.

rēdāmo, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

āmābīlis, *e*, *adj.*

hūmīlis, *e*, *adj.*

inferior, *us*, *adj. comp.*

felicitās, *adv*.

felix, *icis*, *adj.*

Mācedo, *onis*, *m*.

factus, *affectus*, *a*, *um*,

*part. and adj.*

fūror, *oris*, *m*.

māgistrātus, *us*, *m*.

magnificus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

virgo, *inis*, *f*.

maintain,

make,

man,

manage,

manifest,

maniple,

manner,

many,

many, how,

many, very,

marble,

market-place,

master,

measure, to,

meditate,

meet,

mellow,

membrane,

memorable,

memory,

metal,

migrate,

mild,

milk,

mind,

mindful,

miserable,

mistake,

—, make *a*,

mistress,

money,

month,

monument,

moon,

more,

mortal,

mother,

mound,

mount, to,

mountain,

mouth,

move,

much,

multitude,

my (mine),

name,

narrow,

native land,

nature,

naval,

near to, *prep.*,

near, *adj.*,

necessary,

necessity,

need,

needful,

needle,

neither,

neither, nor,

nest,

net,

never,

new,

next,

## NEXT.

servo, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
fācio, *fēci*, *factum*, 3.  
hūmo, *c*.; vir, *virī*, *m*.  
gēro, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3.  
manifestus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
manipulus, *i*, *m*.

mos, *mōris*, *m*.

multus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

quōt, *indec. rel. adj.*

permulti, *ae*, *a*, *adj.*

marmor, *ōris*, *n*.

fōrum, *i*, *n*. [*tri*, *m*.

dēminus, *i*, *māgiater*,  
mātor, *mensus*, 4.

mōditor, *atus*, 1.

ēbeo, *ivi* and *ii*, *itum*,

molis, *e*, *adj.* [4.

membrāna, *ae*, *f*.

mēmōrābilis, *e*, *adj.*

mēmōria, *e*, *adj.*

mētallum, *i*, *n*.

mīgro, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

mīlis, *e*, *adj.*

lac, *lactis*, *n*.

mens, *ntis*, *f*.

mēmōr, *ōris*, *adj.*

m ser, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

error, *oris*, *m*.

errō, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

dēmna, *ae*, *f*.

pēmnia, *ae*, *f*.

mensis, *is*, *m*.

mōnumentum, *i*, *n*.

līna, *ae*, *f*.

plus, *plūris*, *neut. adj.*,  
in *pl. plūris*, *a*.

mortālis, *e*, *adj.*

māter, *tris*, *f*.

agger, *ōris*, *m*.

conscendo, *di*, *sum*, 3.

mons, *ntis*, *m*.

ōe, *ōris*, *n*.

mōveo, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, 2.

multus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

multitudo, *inis*, *f*.

meus, *a*, *um*, *adj. pron.*

nōmen, *inis*, *n*.

angustus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

patria, *ae*, *f*.

nātūra, *ae*, *f*.

nivālis, *e*, *adj.*

prōpi, *acc.*

prōpinquus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

necessarius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

necessitas, *ātis*, *f*.

opus, *indec. sube. with*  
*abl. and adj.*

necessarius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

ācus, *us*, *f*.

neuter, *tra*, *trum*, *in-*  
*def. pron.*

nēquē, *nec*, *conj.*

nīdus, *i*, *m*.

rēte, *is*, *n*.

nunquam, *adv.*

nīvus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* [*sup.*

proximus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

night,	night.	pear,	PROTEOT.
nightingale,	nox, ctis, <i>f.</i>	pear-tree,	pirum, <i>i, n.</i>
no, none,	luscinia, <i>ae, f.</i>	pearl,	prus, <i>i, f.</i>
noble,	nullus, <i>a, um, indef.</i>	perceive,	margarita, <i>ae, f.</i>
nobody, no one,	nobilis, <i>e, adj.</i> [ <i>pron.</i>	perfect,	sentio, <i>si, sum, 4.</i>
not,	nemo, <i>inis, c.</i>	perish,	perfectus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
nothing,	nōn, <i>haud, adv.</i>	persuade,	pereo, <i>intereo, iui and</i>
nourish,	nihil, <i>indec. suba.</i>		ii, <i>itum, 4.</i>
now,	nutrio, <i>iui, itum, 4.</i>		persuadeo, <i>si, sum, with</i>
number,	nunc, <i>jam, adv.</i>		da'.
nurture,	numerus, <i>i, m.</i>	perverse,	perversus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
Oak,	nutrio, <i>iui, itum, 4.</i>	philosopher,	philosophus, <i>i, m.</i>
oath,	quercus, <i>us, f.</i>	pillage,	diripio, <i>ui, eptum, 3.</i>
obey,	fusjurandum, <i>see p. 26.</i>	pitch a camp,	castra pono, <i>poni, itum,</i>
	pairo, <i>ui, itum, 2; obc-</i>		3.
	dio <i>iui, itum, 4, with</i>	plty,	miseror, <i>itus and rtus,</i>
	dat.		2; miseret, <i>p. 109.</i>
object,	recuso, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>	place,	lucus, <i>i, m.</i> [ <i>with gen.</i>
obscure,	obcurus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	place, to,	collico, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>
observe (carefully),	contemplor, <i>atus, 1.</i>	plain,	placities, <i>ei, f.</i>
obtain,	pairo, <i>avi, atum, 1; ad-</i>	plan,	consilium, <i>ii, n.</i>
	ipiscor, <i>eptus, 3.</i>	plant,	planta, <i>ae, f.</i>
—— possession of,	prior, <i>itus, 4.</i>	play,	ludo, <i>si, sum, 3.</i>
ocean,	ocianus, <i>i, m.</i>	pleasant,	fecundus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
often,	saep', <i>adv.</i>	please,	plceo, <i>ui, itum, 2, with</i>
often, very,	saepissime, <i>adv.</i>	pleases, it,	placet, <i>p. 109.</i> [ <i>dat.</i>
oftentimes,	saepnumero, <i>adv.</i>	pleasing,	gratus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
old,	senex, <i>senis (of persons</i>	pleasure,	voluptas, <i>atis, f.</i>
	only), <i>utis, f.</i>	plenty,	cipia, <i>ae, f.</i>
old age,	senectus, <i>utis, f.</i>	plum,	prunum, <i>i, n.</i>
olden,	antiquus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	plum-tree,	prunus, <i>i, f.</i>
one,	finus, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	plunder, <i>suba,</i>	praeda, <i>ae, f.</i>
one, of the two,	alter, <i>a, um, indef.</i>	—— verb,	diripio, <i>ui, eptum, 3.</i>
only,	solum, <i>adv.</i> [ <i>pron.</i>	poem,	carmen, <i>inis, n.</i>
onset,	impetus, <i>us, m.</i>	poet,	poeta, <i>ae, m.</i>
oppose,	resisto, <i>stili, stitum, 3;</i>	Pompey,	Pompeius, <i>ii, m.</i>
	oppugno, <i>avi, atum,</i>	poor,	pauper, <i>eris, adj.</i>
	1, <i>with dat.</i>	poverty,	imago, <i>inis, f.</i>
oracle,	oraculum, <i>i, n.</i>	power,	statio, <i>onis, f.</i>
oration,	oratio, <i>onis, f.</i>		paupertas, <i>atis, f.</i>
orator,	orator, <i>oris, m.</i>		potentia, <i>ae, potestas,</i>
order,	iubeo, <i>jussi, jussum, 2.</i>		atis, <i>f.</i>
ornament,	ornamentum, <i>i, n.; duc-</i>	powerful,	potens, <i>tis, adj.</i>
	cus, <i>oris, n.</i>	praise, <i>suba,</i>	laus, <i>dis, f.</i>
other, of two,	alter, <i>a, um, indef.</i>	—— verb,	laudo, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>
	<i>pron.</i>	precious,	carius, <i>a, um, adj.</i>
overcome,	supero, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>	prefer,	praefero, <i>p. 104; mulo,</i>
owe, ought,	debeo, <i>ui, itum, 2.</i>		<i>p. 99.</i>
owing, it is,	per(te) stat.	prepare,	pairo, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>
ox,	bos, <i>bovis.</i>	prepared,	piratus, <i>a, um, part.</i>
Face,	passus, <i>us, m.</i>		<i>and adj.</i>
Pain,	dolor, <i>oris, m.</i>	presence of, in,	coram, <i>prep. with abl.</i>
pains, to take,	cero, <i>avi, atum, 1.</i>	present,	praesens, <i>tis, adj.</i>
paint,	pingo, <i>nxi, ctum, 3.</i>	present, to be,	adsum, <i>p. 39.</i>
parent,	parens, <i>ntis, c.</i>	preserve,	servo, <i>conseruo, avi,</i>
part,	pars, <i>tis, f.</i>		<i>atum, 1.</i>
partner,	socius, <i>ii, m.</i> [ <i>tum, 4.</i>	press,	primo, <i>pressi, pressum,</i>
pass by, over,	praetereo, <i>iui and ii,</i>	press upon,	opprimo, <i>pressi, pres-</i>
—— away,	labor, <i>lapeus, 3.</i>		<i>sum, 3.</i>
—— through,	transeo, <i>p. 106.</i>	pretense,	smillatio, <i>onis, f.</i>
—— (come to),	flo, <i>factus, fieri, p. 107.</i>	prevent,	obsto, <i>st ti, st tum, 3.</i>
passion,	cupiditas, <i>utis, f.</i>	probable,	verisimilis, <i>e, adj.</i>
past,	praetorius, <i>a, um, adj.</i>	prohibit,	prohibeo, <i>ui, itum, 2.</i>
path,	via, <i>ae, f.</i>	promise,	promitto, <i>mihi, missum,</i>
patience,	patientia, <i>ae, f.</i>		<i>3; polliceor, itus, 3.</i>
patiently,	p. tient r, <i>adv.</i>	properly,	prohibeo, <i>rectis, dv.</i>
peace,	pax, <i>pacia, f.</i>	prostrate, to,	affligo, <i>xi, ctum, 3.</i>
peacock,	pavo, <i>onis, m.</i>	protect,	tueor, <i>itus and t. tus, 2.</i>

- provide,  
provisions,  
prudence,  
prudent,  
public,  
punish,  
punishment,  
pupil,  
pursuit,  
put end to,  
put to death,  
put to flight,  
power of, in the,  
Quality, good,  
queen,  
quiet,  
quit,  
kace,  
rainbow,  
rains, it,  
raise (forces),  
rapacious,  
rapid,  
rare,  
rashness,  
rather, have,  
read,  
read aloud,  
read through,  
ready,  
reason,  
receive,  
recklessness,  
recover,  
refresh,  
refuse,  
reign,  
reject,  
rejoice,  
relate,  
remain,  
remain, over,  
remember,  
remembered, to be,  
render assistance,  
renowned,  
repents, it,  
resist,  
resolve,  
respect, to,  
rest, the,  
restrain,  
retire,  
return,  
reverence, to,  
reward,  
Rhine,  
Rhodes,  
Rhone,  
rich,  
riches,  
ride, to,  
provide,  
prōvideō, *idi, isum, 2.*  
commēatus, *uum, m.*  
prudentia, *ae, f.*  
prudens, *tis, adj.*  
publicus, *a, um, adj.*  
pūnio, *ivi, itum, 4.*  
poena, *ae, f.*  
discipulus, *i, m.*  
stādium, *ii, n.*  
finio, *ivi, itum, 4.*  
interficio, *fecī, sectum.*  
fūgo, *avi, atum, 1.* [3.  
pīnes, *prep. with acc.*  
virtūs, *ūtis, f.*  
rēgina, *ae, f.*  
tranquillus, *a, um, adj.*  
excedo, *cessi, cessum, 3.*  
gūnus, *ūs, n.*  
arcus coelestis, *m.*  
plūit, *p. 110.*  
compāro, *avi, atum, 1.*  
rīpax, *ācis, adj.*  
r. p. dūs, *a, um, adj.*  
rārus, *a, um, adj.*  
tīmēritas, *ātis, f.*  
mīlo, *p. 99.*  
l. go, *lēgi, lectum, 3.*  
rēcto, *avi, atum, 1.*  
perlēgo, *lēgi, lectum, 3.*  
pirātus, *a, um, part.*  
and *adj.*  
rūtio, *ōnis, f.*  
accipio, *cēpi, ceptum, 3.*  
t. m. r. tas, *ātis, f.*  
rēcūpro, *avi, atum, 1.*  
recreo, *avi, atum, 1.*  
recūso, *avi, atum, 1.*  
regno, *avi, atum, 1.*  
aspēnor, *atus, 1.*  
gaudeo, *see p. 108.*  
narro, *avi, atum, 1.*  
māneo, *mansi, mansum.*  
sūpersum, *p. 39.* [3.  
rēm niscor, —, *3.*  
mēmōrābīlis, *e, adj.*  
auxilium fero, *tūli, lātum, ferre, 3 irr.*  
clārus, *a, um, adj.*  
poenitet, *p. 109.*  
resisto, *steti, stitum, 3,*  
with *dat.*  
constituo, *ūi, ūtum, 3.*  
obseruo, *avi, atum, 1.*  
cōtēri, *ae, a, adj.*  
c. f. recco, *ui, itum, 2.*  
cōdo, *concedo, cessi, cessum, 3.*  
rōdeo, *p. 106; rēvorto, ti, sum; rēvortor, sus, 3.*  
vōnēror, *atus, 1.*  
prāmium, *ii, n.*  
Rhēnus, *i, m.*  
Rhōdus, *i, f.*  
Rhōdānus, *i, m.*  
dives, *itis, adj.*  
divitiāe, *arum, pl. f.*  
vēhor, *vectus, 3.*  
right,  
rightly,  
rise, to,  
river,  
robber,  
rock,  
Roman,  
Rome,  
root,  
rose,  
rough, rugged,  
round,  
rule,  
run,  
rush together,  
Sacred,  
sacrifice, to,  
sad,  
safe,  
safety,  
sagacious,  
sailor,  
sake of, for the,  
Sallust,  
same,  
sanguinary,  
save,  
savor of,  
say,  
scarcely,  
scent,  
scholar,  
school,  
Scythian,  
sea,  
—, of the,  
scat,  
second,  
secretly,  
see,  
see, go to,  
seeing,  
seek,  
seem,  
seize,  
seize on,  
seldom,  
senate,  
send,  
— on before,  
— together,  
senee,  
separate,  
servant,  
serviceable,  
—, to be,  
set out,  
— (an example),  
severe,  
severely,  
SEVERELY.  
rectus, *a, um, adj.*  
prōbe, *recte, adv.*  
ōrior, *ortus, 4.*  
flūvius, *ii, m.; flūmen, ius, n.*  
latro, *ōnis, m.*  
rūpes, *is, f.*  
Rōmānus, *a, um, adj.*  
Roma, *ae, f.*  
rādix, *icis, f.*  
rōsa, *ae, f.*  
asper, *a, um, adj.*  
circum, *prep. with acc.*  
rēgo, *xi, ctum, 3.* [3.  
curro, *ēcurri, cursum.*  
convōlo, *avi, atum, 1.*  
sēcer, *cra, crum, adj.*  
immōlo, *avi, atum, 1.*  
tristia, *e, adj.*  
tūtus, *a, um, adj.*  
sūlus, *ūtis, f.*  
prūdēns, *tis, adj.*  
nauta, *ae, m.*  
grātia, *causā, abl. with*  
Bellustius, *ii, m.* [gen.  
Idem, *eadem, idem, adj.*  
pron.  
ātrox, *ōcis, adj.*  
servo, *conseruo, avi,*  
sūpio, *ūi, 3.* [atum, 1.  
dico, *xi, ctum, 3.*  
vix, *adv.*  
ōdor, *ōris, m.*  
discipulus, *i, m.*  
schōla, *ae, f.*  
Scythia, *ae, m.*  
mārē, *is, n.*  
mārinus, *a, um, adj.*  
rōdes, *is, f.*  
sēcundus, *a, um; alter,*  
*a, um, adj.*  
clam, *adv.*  
videō, *idi, isum, 2; cer-*  
no, *crēvi, crētum, 3.*  
vīso, *i, um, 3.*  
visus, *us, m.*  
quaero, *quaeſivi, quae-*  
situm, *3.*  
v. deor, *visus, 2.*  
comprehendo, *di, sum,*  
*3; rāpio, ūi, tum, 3.*  
arripio, *ui, eptum, 3.*  
rūro, *adv.*  
s. n. tus, *us, m.*  
mitto, *miſi, missum, 3.*  
prae-mitto, etc.  
committo, etc.  
sensus, *us, m.*  
sēpāro, *avi, atum, 1;*  
sēcerno, *crēvi, crētum,*  
m. nister, *tri, m.* [3.  
i. t. li, *e, adj.*  
prōsum, *p. 39.*  
prōf. ciscor, *fectus, 3.*  
praebeo, *ui, itum, 2.*  
sēcūrus, *a, um, grāvis,*  
grīv. t. r, *adv.* [e, *adj.*

shake,	SHAKE.	quatio, —, quassum, 3.	splendid,	THESE.	splendūlus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
shames, it,		pūdet, p. 109.	spring,		vēr, vēria, n.
share, to,		partior, itus, 4.	sprout,		planta, ae, f.
sharp,		scūtus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>	spur,		calcar, āris, n.
sharpen,		scuo, ūi, ūtum, 3.	spy out,		spēcūlor, atus, 1.
shield,		scūtum, i, n.	stag,		cervus, i, m.
shine,		fulgeo, si, sum, 2.	stand,		sto, stēti, statum, 1.
ship,		nāvīs, is, f.	star,		stella, ae, f.
shore,		litus, ōris, n.	state,		civitas, ātis, f.
short,		brēvis, e, <i>adj.</i>	station,		statio, ōnis, f.
shortly,		mox, <i>adv.</i>	statue,		imāgo, inis, f.
shout,		clāmo, avi, atum, 1.	steep,		arduus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
shut off,		interclūdo, si, sum, 3.	stern,		atrox, ōcis, <i>adj.</i>
Sicily,		Sicilia, ae, f.	stone,		lāpis, idis, m.
sick,		aeger, gra, grum, <i>adj.</i>	stone, of,		lāpideus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
side with,		adeum, p. 39.	storm,		tempestas, ātis, f.
side, on this,		cis, citrā, <i>prep.</i> with	storm, take by,		expugno, avi, atum, 1.
siege,		obsidio, ōnis, f. [ <i>acc.</i>	story,		fābūla, ae, f.
sign,		signum, i, n.	straight,		rectus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
silence,		silentium, ii, n.	strength,		vis, f., <i>see</i> p. 26.
silent, be,		taceo, ui, itum, 2.	strengthen,		firmo, avi, atum, 1.
silver,		argentum, i, n.	strive,		nitor, xus, 3.
sing,		canto, avi, atum, 1;	— hard,		enitor, etc.
		cāno, cecinī, cantum,	strong,		vālidus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
sister,		sōror, ōris, f. [3.	—, make,		firmo, avi, atum, 1.
sit,		adeo, ēdi, esum, 2.	study,		stūdium, ii, n.
skillful, skilled in,		peritus, a, um, sōlers,	—, to,		stūdeo, ui, —, 2, with
		rtis, <i>adj.</i>	successful,		felix, icis, <i>adj.</i> [ <i>lat.</i>
skin (of animal),		pellis, is, f.	sudden,		sūbitus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
slaughter,		caedes, is, f.	suddenly,		sūb to, <i>adv.</i>
slave,		servus, i, m.	suffer,		pātor, passus, 3.
slavery,		servitūs, ūtis, f.	sufficiently,		satis, <i>adv.</i>
slay,		interficio, fēci, fectum,	summer,		aestas, ātis, f.
		occido, cidi, cisum, 3.	sun,		sol, sōlis, m. [p. 108.
sleep,		somnus, i, m.	sup,		coeno, avi, atum, 1, <i>acc.</i>
slender,		tenuis, e, <i>adj.</i>	supplies,		commēstus, ūm, m.
sllothfulness,		segnities, ei, f.	surround,		cingo, xi, ctum, 3.
sluggish,		segnis, e; ignāvus, a,	survive,		sūpersum, p. 89. [108.
		um, <i>adj.</i>	swear,		jūro, avi, atum, 1, <i>see</i> p.
small,		parvus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>	sweet,		dulcis, suāvis, e, <i>adj.</i>
smell,		ōdor, ōris, m.	swell,		intūmesco, tūmuli, 3.
snow,		nix, nivis, f.	swift,		cillēr, ōris, re; vūlcer,
snows, it,		ningit, p. 110.			cris, cre, <i>adj.</i>
so,		itā, tam, <i>adv.</i>	sword,		glādius, ii, m.
soft,		mollis, e, <i>adj.</i>	Syracuse,		Syracūsae, arum, f.
soften,		mollis, i, itum, 4.	Table,		mensa, ae, f.
soldier,		miles, itis, c.	take,		cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
some,		nonnullus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>	tall,		celsus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
some one, some } thing,		aliquid, ālquid, <i>indef.</i>	taste, to,		gusto, avi, atum, 1.
some time,		quondam, <i>adv.</i>	tax,		vectigal, ilis, n.
sometimes,		nonnunquam, <i>adv.</i>	teach,		dūceo, ui, ctum, 2.
son,		filius, ii, m.; <i>voc.</i> fili.	teacher,		trīgister, tri, m.
son-in-law,		gēner, ōri, m.	tell,		dico, xi, ctum, 3.
song,		carmen, inis, n.; can-	tempest,		tempestas, ātis, f.
soon,		mox, <i>adv.</i> [tus, us, m.	temple,		templum, i, n.
soon as,		simul atque (ac), <i>conj.</i>	tender,		tēnēr, a, um, <i>adj.</i>
sorrow,		dōlor, ōris, m.	tent,		tābernāculum, i, n.
soul,		ānīmus, i, m.	terrify,		terreo, ui, itum, 2.
sound,		sōnitus, us, m.	territories,		fines, ium, m.
sovereignty,		dōminātus, us, m.	terror,		terror, ōris, m.
sow,		sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.	that, <i>pron.</i> ,		iste, ille, is, p. 43-4.
speak,		lōquor, lōcūtus, 3.	—, <i>conj.</i> ,		ut, p. 130.
—, to,		all quor, etc.	— not,		nē, quā, p. 130.
speech, a,		oratio, ōnis, f. [tum, 3.	their own,		sūus, a, um, <i>adj.</i> <i>pron.</i>
spend life,		actātem ago, ēgi, ac-	then,		tum, <i>adv.</i>
spriced,		ferox, ōcis, <i>adj.</i>	then indeed,		tum dēmum.
			there,		ibi, <i>adv.</i>

thin,  
thing,  
think,  
thither,  
through,  
throw a bridge }  
over a river,  
thunderbolt,  
thunders, it,  
thus,  
tiger,  
time,  
timid,  
to,  
too, too much,  
tongue,  
torture,  
toward,  
tower,  
town,  
train up,  
trained,  
true,  
triumph,  
trouble, *verb*,  
—, *nuba*,  
troublesome,  
Troy,  
true,  
trust,  
try,  
turn back,  
tyrant,  
Unable, am,  
unbecoming, it is,  
unbounded,  
unbreakfasted,  
uncertain,  
under,  
  
undergo,  
understand,  
undertake,  
undone,  
unfriendly,  
unjust,  
unjustly,  
unlearned,  
unless,  
unlike,  
unskillful,  
unwilling, to be,  
upper,  
upright,  
use, to,  
useful,  
utmost,  
Valley,  
valor,  
various,  
vehemently,  
verse,  
vex,  
vexes, it,  
victim,  
victory,  
vigorous,

**THIN.**  
tenuis, e, *adj*.  
res, ei, *f*.  
pito, cogito, avi, atum,  
eo, *adv*. [1.  
per, *prep*. with *acc*.  
famen ponte iungo,  
[2.  
juxti, nectum, 3.  
fulmen, inis, n.  
tññt, p. 110.  
itā, *adv*.  
tigris, is and idis, e.  
tempus, ōris, n.  
timidus, a, um, *adj*.  
ñd, *prep*. with *acc*.  
n mis, *adv*.  
lingua, ae, *f*.  
crūciatus, us, m.  
versus, adversus, *prep*.  
turre, is, *f*. [with *acc*.  
oppidum, i, n.  
grūdio, ivi, itum, 4.  
grūditus, a, um, *part*.  
arbor, ōris, *f*. [and *adj*.  
triumpho, avi, atum, 1.  
mōveo, mōvi, mōtum,  
aerumna, ae, *f*. [2.  
molestus, a, um, *adj*.  
Troja, ae, *f*.  
vērus, a, um, *adj*.  
fido, p. 108.  
expōrior, ritus, 4.  
rēvorto, ti, sum, and tor,  
týrannus, i, m. [sus, 3.  
nēqueo, ivi and ii, itum,  
dēdēcōt, p. 109. [4.  
infinitus, a, um, *adj*.  
impransus, a, um, *adj*.  
incertus, a, um, *adj*.  
sub, subter, *prep*. with  
*acc*. and *abl*. [4.  
sūbeo, ivi and ii, itum,  
intell go, lxi, lectum, 3.  
susc pio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.  
infectus, a, um, *adj*.  
inimicus, a, um, *adj*.  
injustus, a, um, *adj*.  
injustā, *adv*.  
indoctus, a, um, *adj*.  
nisi, *conj*.  
dis m lis, e, *adj*.  
impritus, a, um, *adj*.  
nōlo, p. 99.  
sup̄rior, us, *adj*. *comp*.  
pr̄bu, a, um, *adj*.  
ītor, ōtus, 3, with *abl*.  
f. t. l. l. e, *adj*.  
summus, a, um, *adj*.  
vallis, is, *f*. [*adv*.  
virt. a, itis, *f*.  
vārius, a, um, *adj*.  
vñh menter, *adv*.  
versus, us, m.  
vexo, avi, atum, 1.  
p̄get, p. 109.  
hostia, victima, ae, *f*.  
victōria, ae, *f*.  
strēnuus, a, um, *adj*.

vigorously,  
virtue,  
visit,  
voice,  
vulture,  
Wage, to,  
wake (*intrans*).  
walk, take a walk,  
wall,  
wanting, to be,  
war,  
warlike,  
warm,  
waste, to lay,  
watch, to,  
water,  
—, to fetch,  
way, in that,  
—, to be in the,  
weakness,  
wealthy,  
weapon,  
wearies, it,  
weep,  
well,  
—, to be,  
well-wishing,  
west,  
whale,  
what,  
  
what sort, of,  
when,  
  
whether,  
which of two,  
while,  
while drinking, etc. *inter* b bendum, etc.  
white,  
whither,  
who,  
  
whole,  
why,  
wicked,  
  
wickedness,  
wide,  
widely,  
wife,  
willful,  
willing, to be,  
—, to be more,  
win,  
  
win upon,  
wind,  
wine,  
wing,  
winter,  
—, of,  
—, to,  
— quarters,  
wisdom,  
wile,

**WISE.**  
strēnuā, *adv*.  
virtus, itis, *f*.  
viso, i, um, 3.  
vox, vōcis, *f*.  
vultur, ōris, m.  
gūro, gessi, gestum, 3.  
vigilo, avi, atum, 1.  
ambūlo, avi, atum, 1.  
mārus, i, m.  
dēsum, p. 39.  
bellum, i, n.  
bell cōsus, a, um, *adj*.  
cālidus, a, um, *adj*.  
vastō, avi, atum, 1.  
vig lo, avi, atum, 1.  
ēqua, ae, *f*.  
aquor, atus, 1.  
itā, *adv*.  
obsum, p. 39.  
infirm tas, itis, *f*.  
ōpulentus, a, um, *adj*.  
t. lum, i, n.  
taedet, p. 109.  
fleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.  
bēnā, *adv*.  
vileo, ul, itum, 2.  
bñc-vōlus, a, um, *adj*.  
occ. dens, ntis, m.  
būlaena, ae, *f*.  
quā, quae, quid and  
quod, *inter*. and *in-*  
*def*. *pron*.  
quālis, e, *rel*. *adj*.  
quando, *inter*. *adv*. ;  
quum, *adv*. and *conj*.  
ntrum, *conj*.  
ūter, tra, trum, *adj*.  
dum, *adv*. [*pron*.  
inter b bendum, etc.  
albus, a, um, *adj*.  
quo, *rel*. *adv*.  
qui, quae, quod, *rel*.  
pr. ; quae, quae, quā  
or quod, *inter*. *pron*.  
t. tus, a, um, *adj*.  
cur, quārē, *adv*.  
impr̄bus, a, um; nō-  
quam, *indecl*. *adj*.  
socius, ōris, n.  
litus, a, um, *adj*.  
l. t. e, *adv*. [*f*.  
uxor, ōris, mūller, ōris,  
perversus, a, um, *adj*.  
vilo, p. 99.  
milo, p. 99.  
ñd piscor, optus, 3; pāro,  
avi, atum, 1.  
blandior, itus, 4.  
ventus, i, m.  
vinum, i, n.  
ila, ae, *f*.  
h ems, ēmis, *f*.  
hibernus, a, um, *adj*.  
hūmo, avi, atum, 1.  
hiberna, ōrum, n. *pl*.  
sūplentia, ae, *f*.  
s plena, ntis, *adj*.



# INDEX TO VOCABULARIES.—ENGLISH WORDS. 187

wish, *subs.*,  
—, *verb*,

within,  
woman,  
wonder at,  
wonderful,  
wood,  
work,  
world,  
worship, to,  
wound,  
—, *verb*,  
wretched,

WISH.  
völuntas, ätis, *f*.  
opto, avi, atum, 1; völo,  
p. 99.  
intra, *prep.* with *acc.*  
fömina, ae, müller, öris,  
míror, ätus, 1. [*f*.  
mírús, mirábilis, e, *adj.*  
silva, ae, *f*.  
öpus, öris, *n*.  
mundus, i, *m*.  
vönöror, atus, 1.  
vulnus, öris, *n*.  
vulnéro, avi, atum, 1.  
míser, a, um, *adj.*

write, to,  
writer,  
Year,  
yesterday,  
yield,  
your,

youth,  
—, (a young)  
man or wom-  
an),

Zeal,  
zealous,  
zealous, to be,

ZEALOUS.  
scribo, psi, ptum, 3.  
scriptor, öris, *m*.  
annus, i, *m*.  
héri, *adv*.  
cëdo, cessi, cessum, 3.  
tíus, a, um; vester, tra,  
trum, *adj. pron.*  
jüventus, ütis, *f*.

jüvénis, c.

stídiüm, ii, *n*.  
stúdiösus, a, um, *adj.*  
stüdeo, ui, 2, with *dat*

THE END.

. m d.







THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

Form 410

APR 8 1926

